教辅资料站
电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级英语(下)

JJ版 按100:1 配赠教师用书

（三年级起点）

内含 名师划重点 基础默写本

经典好题·精妙点拨

荣德基 主编

典中点

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级 英语

下 （JJ版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：杨　娜　吴晶晶

微信公众号
教辅资料站

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

目录 CONTENTS

Unit 1 Going to Beijing

Lesson 1 I Am Excited! …… 1

Lesson 2 What Are You Doing? …… 3

Lesson 3 Who Is Singing? …… 5

Lesson 4 Who Is Hungry? …… 7

Lesson 5 What Are They Doing? …… 9

Lesson 6 Danny Is Lost! …… 11

Again, Please! (听力专练 读写专练) …13

Unit 2 In Beijing

Lesson 7 Arriving in Beijing …… 15

Lesson 8 Tian'anmen Square …… 17

Lesson 9 The Palace Museum …… 19

Lesson 10 The Great Wall …… 21

Lesson 11 Shopping in Beijing …… 23

Lesson 12 A Visit to the Great Wall …… 25

Again, Please! (听力专练 读写专练) …27

Unit 3 Writing Home

Lesson 13 Let's Buy Postcards! … 29

Lesson 14 Jenny Writes a Postcard … 31

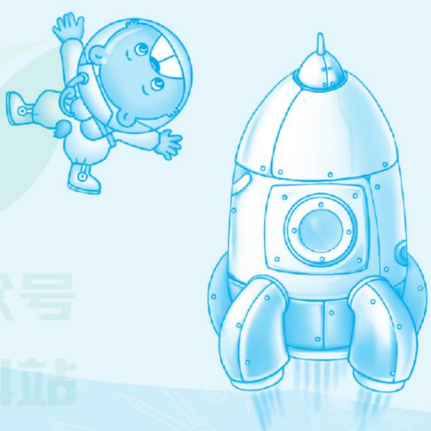
Lesson 15 Sending the Postcards … 33

Lesson 16 An Email Is Fast …… 35

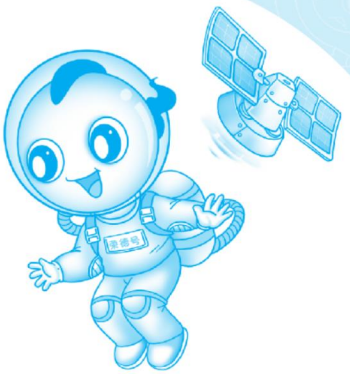
Lesson 17 Danny's Email …… 37

Lesson 18 Little Zeke Sends an Email …… 39

Again, Please! (听力专练 读写专练) …41



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



Unit 4 Did You Have a Nice Trip?

Lesson 19 Li Ming Comes Home … 43

Lesson 20 Jenny Goes Home …… 45

Lesson 21 Look at the Photos! …… 47

Lesson 22 Gifts for Everyone …… 49

Lesson 23 An Email from Li Ming … 51

Lesson 24 A Gift for Little Zeke … 53

Again, Please! (听力专练 读写专练) …55

期末复习训练

Unit 1 复习训练

知识导图 …… 57

重难点过关检测 …… 58

Unit 2 复习训练

知识导图 …… 60

重难点过关检测 …… 61

Unit 3 复习训练

知识导图 …… 63

重难点过关检测 …… 64

Unit 4 复习训练

知识导图 …… 66

重难点过关检测 …… 67

8 开活页部分

Unit 1 过关检测卷 …… 69

Unit 2 过关检测卷 …… 73

期中检测卷 …… 77

Unit 3 过关检测卷 …… 81

Unit 4 过关检测卷 …… 85

期末检测卷 …… 89

参考答案及点拨 …… 93

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

题有千变万化 我有妙法拆招

——本书题型解题方法示例

小学《典中点》英语再度全新升级，为大家带来了解题的方法。有方法，解题快，不丢分！更多绝招请大家在书中寻找哦！



书面表达

综合能力题

阅读理解
完形填空
补全对话

(二) 阅读短文，完成任务。

Sometimes we stayed in small houses in the mountains. I really loved them. The houses were clean and quiet. We always got up early because we wanted to go swimming. There were beautiful lakes near the houses. We also went fishing and cooked food outside.

A.根据短文内容，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

(　　) 5. There were mountains and lakes near the small houses.【联系上下文法】

方法点拨：本题用联系上下文法解答。

短文倒数第六句“Sometimes we stayed in small houses in the mountains.”意为:有时候我们住在山里的小房子里。倒数第二句“There were beautiful lakes near the houses.”意为：房子附近有漂亮的湖。结合这两句可知“小房子附近有山和湖”。此题选T。

句子题

句子翻译
仿写句子
句意填空

六、看图，根据例句写句子。【举一反三法】

例：

This is a woman. She is singing.
These are women. They are singing.

1. 　2. 　3. 

1. This is a child. He is cleaning the room.

_____

方法点拨：本题用举一反三法解答。

观察示例可知本题是要把单数句变成复数句。每小题中不同的是人物和活动，所以我们可以提炼出固定句型结构：These are +名词复数. They are +动词（短语）的-ing形式. 例如，1小题中名词复数是children；动词短语的-ing形式是cleaning the room。

单项选择题

四、读一读，选择正确的答案。

(　　) 3. _____! I _____ a red hotel.【同义词辨析法】

A.Look; look　　B. Look; see

C. See; see

方法点拨：本题用同义词辨析法解答。

look表示“看”，强调看的动作、过程；see表示“看见”，强调看的结果，因此此题选B。

听力题

一、听录音，选出正确的图片。【听关键词法】

(　　) 1. A. 　B. 　C. 

方法点拨：本题用听关键词法解答。

在听听力材料之前，我们要先快速浏览图片，了解每个小题要听的关键信息。例如，1小题给出的是三个景点的图片，那么我们在听的时候就要特别注意提到的景点词汇。明确每小题要抓住的关键信息，才能少出错。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Going to Beijing

Lesson 1 I Am Excited! ☞(答案见97页)

一、根据图片写单词，完成句子。

1. The little girl likes to _____.



2. I'm happy. I want to _____.



3. My sister can _____high.



4. Mr. Li _____ in front of the blackboard.



5. Li Hua _____ in the park every morning.



二、单项选择。

( ) 1. —_____

—That's okay. 【导学号 8582825】

A. I'm happy. B. I'm excited.

C. I'm sorry.

( ) 2. Danny is excited. He _____.

A. wants sing B. wants to sing

C. want to sing

( ) 3. Look at this picture. _____



A. Don't swim.

B. Don't walk on the grass.

C. Turn right.

( ) 4. —When do you _____ Shanghai?

—At 9:00.

A. arrive B. arrive in

C. arrives at

( ) 5. _____, please, Mike.

A. Stand up

B. Standing up

C. Stands up

三、火眼金睛，选择合适的词（组）填空。

1. Danny, we are in the library. Please _____ (not / don't) run.

2. Mr. Li is Li Ming's father. His mother is _____ (Mr. / Mrs.) Li.

3. I'm tired. I want to _____ (sit down / look down).

4. If you can answer the question (问题), hands _____ (up / down) please.

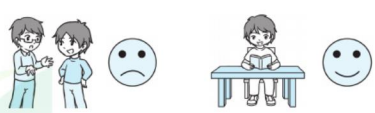
5. Li Ming and Jenny _____ (fly / flies) kites in the park.

四、核心素养练

同学们，作为一名有素质、懂文明的小学生，我们要知道在某些场合应该做什么事不应该做什么事。

请你根据下面的例子及提示，仿写句子。

例：in the library



Don't talk in the library. Read books, please.

1. in the classroom



_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. at the train station



_____

_____

3. in the park



_____

_____

五、连词成句。

1. walks my the bus friend to (.)

_____

2. arrives school he at at 7:00 morning every (.)

_____

3. don't straight please go (.)

_____

4. to drink I want water (.)

_____

六、选择正确的选项，补全对话。

A. Oh, I'm sorry.
B. They stand beside their horses.
C. May I take photos?
D. Please stand here.
E. Can I sit on the horse?

Tour Guide: Welcome to Xi'an. Look at the Terra Cotta Warriors(兵马俑). 1. _____

Lily: Wow. 2. _____

Tour Guide: No, you can't. 3. _____

Lily: OK. I'm very excited.

Mike: They are great. 4. _____

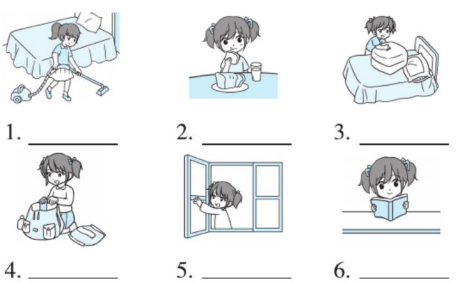
Tour Guide: No. Look! "No photos!"

Mike: 5. _____

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

It's 8:00 on Saturday morning. The weather is warm and sunny. Amy puts on her T-shirt and goes out. She wants to play football with her friends in the park. But her mother stops her and says, "Look at your bedroom. It is untidy. Please make your bed. Open the window and air the room. Clean the floor. Put your books in your schoolbag." She says, "OK, Mum." It's 9:00. She asks, "May I go now?" "Yes, you may," says her mother. Amy rides her bike and arrives at the park at 9:20. She sees a boy running on the grass. She points to a sign(牌子) and says, "Don't walk or ran on the grass."

(一)短文中 Amy 做了哪些事情？请在相应的图片下打"√"。 【关键信息定位法】



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

(二)根据短文内容，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

( )1. It's warm and sunny today.

( )2. The word "untidy" means "整洁的" in Chinese.

( )3. Amy cleans her room in the afternoon.

( )4. Amy goes to the park by bike.

( )5. Amy says to the boy, "Don't walk or run on the grass."

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 2 What Are You Doing?

(答案见97页)

一、读一读，选出不同类的一项。

( )1. A. sing B. get C. song

( )2. A. fly B. excited C. look

( )3. A. see B. tired C. happy

( )4. A. down B. up C. dumplings

( )5. A. washing B. dancing C. sing

二、根据图片及首字母提示补全单词，完成句子。

1. The little b_____ is my brother.



2. Some g_____ are dancing.



3. There are two p_____ on the wall.



4. She is l_____ out of the window.



5. I d_____ a picture in the evening.



三、单项选择。

( )1. The pupils are _____ the blackboard.

A. looking at B. looking out of C. looking

( )2. —What's Danny doing?

—Danny is _____ a song _____ your mother.

A. sing; with B. sings; for C. singing; to

( )3. What _____ Jenny and Li Ming doing?

A. do B. is C. are

( )4. I _____ some pandas in the zoo.

A. see B. seeing C. sees

( )5. Please _____ talk in class.

A. not B. don't C. can't

四、读一读，根据句子内容及图片信息，补全句子，完成对话。

1.  2.  3. 

4.  5. 

1. —What is your father doing?

—He _____ a book.

2. —What is your mother doing?

—She _____ in the kitchen.

3. —_____ your grandmother _____?

—_____ the flowers.

4. —_____ your grandfather _____?

—_____.

5. —What _____ you _____?

—I _____ homework.

五、选择正确的选项，补全对话。

A: Hello. 1. _____

B: Hello, Bruce. This is Mr. Brown. 2. _____

A: I'm watching TV.

B: 3. _____

A: No, she isn't. She is cooking.

B: 4. _____

A: He is working on the computer.

B: 5. _____

A: Sure. Dad, there is a call for you.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A. What's your father doing?
B. May I speak to him?
C. Is your mother watching TV?
D. This is Bruce.
E. What are you doing?

六、阅读理解。

(一)核心素养练

同学们,你们知道吗,由于时区的关系,世界上不同城市、不同国家的时间是不一样的,这就叫作"时差"。北京比纽约早 13 个小时;比伦敦早 8 个小时。

请你阅读下面有关"时差"的短文,并选择正确答案。

At this moment(时刻),in different places of the world,people are doing different things.

In Beijing, it's midday. Some people are having lunch. Some are seeing friends and some are shopping.

In London,it's early morning. Most people are sleeping.

In Juneau, it's evening. People are having dinner at home or in the restaurants. Some are going to watch a movie. Some are watching TV at home.

In New York, it's late at night. Most people are sleeping,too.

In Moscow,it's morning. People are working. Children are starting their lessons.

( )1. How many places are there in the passage (文章)?
A. Four. B. Five. C. Six.

( )2. What does the word "midday" mean in Chinese? 【联系上下文法】
A. 上午 B. 中午 C. 晚上

( )3. What are some people doing in Juneau?
A. Some are watching TV.
B. Some are having lunch.
C. Some are working.

( )4. _____ most people are sleeping at this moment.
A. In Beijing and London
B. In New York and Moscow
C. In London and New York

( )5. Which is True(正确的)?
A. It's early morning in Moscow at this moment.
B. People are sleeping in London because it's late at night.
C. Children are starting their lessons in Moscow at this moment.

(二)阅读短文,回答问题。

Today is Teachers' Day. We don't go to school. It's sunny and cool. We are having a good time with Miss Yang in a nature(自然)park. Miss Yang is our English teacher. She is nice to us. We all like her. We are having a picnic(野餐). Look! Linlin and Xiaomeng are singing. Miss Yang is listening to them. Gao Wei is drinking juice. Where is Binbin? He is watching a rabbit. Is the rabbit sleeping? No,it's eating carrots. What am I doing? I am washing some apples with Lin Tao. We are happy!

1. What's the date today?
_____

2. What does Miss Yang teach?
_____

3. What are Linlin and Xiaomeng doing?
_____

4. Is the rabbit eating carrots?
_____

5. What is Lin Tao doing?
_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 3 Who Is Singing?

☞(答案见98页)

一、根据图片及首字母提示写单词，补全句子。

1. The m_____ is our math teacher. 
2. The w_____ is a doctor. 
3. The b_____ is cute. 
4. He is sad. Now he is c_____. 
5. My mother is tired. She is s_____ in bed. 

二、单项选择。

( )1. The teacher is _____ my father.

【导学号 8582825】

A. talks to B. talking to C. talking

( )2. —Is your sister reading a book?

—_____

A. Yes, he is. B. Yes, she isn't. C. No, she isn't.

( )3. I am doing my homework. But Jenny and Danny _____ doing their homework.

A. aren't B. isn't C. don't

( )4. The woman behind me _____ listening to music. 【主谓一致法】

A. am B. is C. are

( )5. —_____ is dancing?

—The girl is dancing.

A. What B. Who C. Where

三、用所给词的正确形式填空。

1. The baby likes _____ (play) and sleep.
2. The girl behind _____ (I) is Lucy.
3. Look! A boy is _____ (run) on the playground. 【规律记忆法】
4. "I'm tired," _____ (say) Linda.
5. Some girls _____ (be) jumping in the park.

四、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

( )1. Who is sleeping?
( )2. Is Jenny singing?
( )3. Where is Mr. Li?
( )4. Are you talking to me?
( )5. May I play with you?

A. No, she isn't. She is reading.
B. Sure.
C. He is behind the door.
D. Yes, I am.
E. Danny is sleeping.

五、按要求写句子。

1. Mr. Wang is playing football. (改为否定句)

_____

2. The boy in a red T-shirt is running. (对画线部分提问)

_____

3. I am singing. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

4. Is the baby boy crying? (作肯定回答)

_____

5. The girls are jumping. (主语改为 the girl)

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

六、选择正确的选项，补全对话。

A：Shh. 1. _____ My grandfather is tired. He is sleeping now.

B：OK. Let's go out to play.

A：Where are we going?

B：2. _____. Bob and Linda are in the park too.

A：Great. Let's go.

At the park

A：Look! There are many flowers. Listen! 3. _____

B：A boy is singing. He is Bob.

A：4. _____

B：She is behind Bob.

A：5. _____

B：She is dancing.

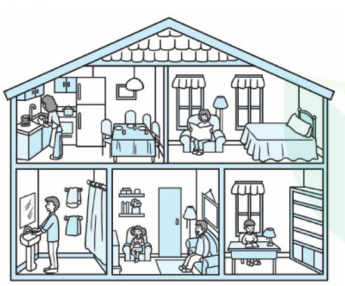
A：Let's go to play with them.

A. What is she doing?　B. Don't talk loudly.
C. Who is singing?　D. Let's go to the park.
E. Where is Linda?

七、核心素养练

学习语言的目的是为了使用语言。同学们已经学习了现在进行时，你们能把所学的知识运用于生活吗？

请你根据图片提示，用现在进行时描述家人晚上做的事情吧。



It's Sunday evening. All my family are at home. Look at us. What are we doing?

My mother is in the kitchen. She is _____. My grandmother is in her bedroom. She _____.

My father is _____.

My grandfather and my sister _____.

What am I doing? _____.

八、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

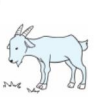
Mrs. Green, Annie and Alice are on the train now. They are going to Shanghai. They are all happy. Annie is looking out of the window. She says, "I see some sheep. They are eating grass." Later, Alice points to some white animals and says, "Look at those. Those sheep are running." But Mrs. Green says, "No, they are not sheep, Alice. They are goats (山羊). The sheep's fur (毛) is curly (蜷曲状的), and the goats' fur is straight. They are different. Annie sees the sheep and you see the goats."

(　　)1. Where are they?
A. They are in Shanghai.
B. They are on the train.
C. They are on a farm.

(　　)2. What are the sheep doing?
A. They are going to Shanghai.
B. They are running.
C. They are eating grass.

(　　)3. What colour are the goats?
A. They are green.
B. They are white.
C. They are white and black.

(　　)4. What does the word "different" mean in Chinese?
A. 一样的　B. 可爱的　C. 不同的

(　　)5. Which is a goat?
A. 
B. 
C. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 4 Who Is Hungry?

☞(答案见98页)

一、根据图片提示写单词，补全句子。

1. I'm thirsty. I'd like some _____.



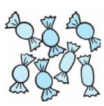
2. Time for lunch. I'm _____.



3. My father likes to drink _____.



4. Don't eat too much _____. It's bad for your teeth.



二、核心素养练

同学们，你们知道中餐(Chinese food)和西餐(Western food)的不同吗？比如中餐里有很多蔬菜，而西餐里则有更多的肉；中餐的烹饪方式丰富，有炒、蒸、煮、腌等，西餐则更多的是烘焙、煎等。

请你给下列食物匹配相应的名称，并按要求做题。

A. salad	B. dumplings	C. hot dog
D. rice	E. pizza	F. noodles

1.  (　　)

2.  (　　)

3.  (　　)

4.  (　　)

5.  (　　)

6.  (　　)

Chinese food:_____(填字母序号)

Western food:_____(填字母序号)

你能分别再写出一种中餐和西餐的名称吗？

_____

三、选词填空。(可重复使用)　【辨析法】

a	an	some

1. I'm hungry. I'd like _____ fruit.
2. —What do you see in the picture?
   —Oh, I see _____ boys and _____ girl.
3. I'd like _____ egg and _____ milk for breakfast.
4. There is _____ orange and _____ pear on the table.

四、单项选择。

(　　)1. I _____ hungry. But she _____ hungry. She is thirsty.
A. am; is　　B. am; isn't
C. am; doesn't

(　　)2. Danny wants to drink some _____.
A. bread　　B. vegetables　　C. tea

(　　)3. —Would you like some fruit?
—_____
A. Yes, please.　　B. No, please.
C. Yes, I like.

(　　)4. —_____ is thirsty? —Li Ming.
A. What　　B. How　　C. Who

(　　)5. —What would you like to eat?
—_____
A. I like fish.
B. I'd like some chicken.
C. Yes, please.

五、根据下面的情景，选出正确的句子。

(　　)1. 你想知道爷爷想不想吃些鱼肉，可以这样问：
A. Would you like some fish?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B. Do you like some fish?

( )2. 你想问朋友午饭想要吃些什么，你可以这样问：

A. Would you like to eat?

B. What would you like for lunch?

( )3. 你看到一个婴儿在睡觉，你可以说：

A. Look! The baby is sleeping.

B. Listen! The baby is crying.

( )4. 你想把东西递给对方，应该说：

A. You are here!

B. Here you are!

六、判断句子与表格内容是（T）否（F）相符。

Jenny				☺
			☹	
Mum	☺			
				☹
Dad		☹		
			☺	

( )1. Jenny is thirsty. She would like some tea.

( )2. Mum is eating dumplings. She likes them.

( )3. Dad wants to eat some fruit.

( )4. Mum and Dad would like some tea to drink.

( )5. Jenny likes candy very much.

七、读一读，选择合适的选项，补全对话。

Mrs. Li: It's time for lunch. 1. _____

Mr. Li: Me, too. But there is no food at home.

Mrs. Li: 2. _____

Mr. Li: OK.

At the restaurant

Mrs. Li: I'd like some rice and vegetables. What about you?

Mr. Li: I don't like rice. 3. _____

Mrs. Li: What would you like to drink?

Mr. Li: 4. _____ How about you?

Mrs. Li: I'd like some juice. 5. _____

Waiter: They are 38 yuan.

A. Let's go to the restaurant.
B. How much are they?
C. I'd like some soup.
D. I'd like some dumplings.
E. I'm hungry.

八、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Look at the clock. It's half past eleven. It's time for lunch. Let's make lunch together. Amy would like some salad（沙拉）. She needs some vegetables and fruit. Tom would like some noodles. We need some tomatoes and eggs for his noodles. Linda would like some vegetables and rice. Me too! And we all like soup. We need some vegetables and eggs for the soup. Lunch is ready!

( )1. What time is it now?

A. It's 11:30. B. It's 6:30.

C. It's 12:00.

( )2. Amy would like _____.

A.  B.  C. 

( )3. Tom would like _____.

A.  B.  C. 

( )4. We would like _____.

A. chicken B. salad

C. soup

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 5 What Are They Doing?

☞(答案见98页)

一、核心素养练

把握字母或字母组合的发音规则，掌握拼读单词的技巧。

读一读，选出与例词画线部分发音相同的单词。

( )1. run

A. hungry B. ruler C. music

( )2. who

A. what B. whose C. where

( )3. tea

A. read B. sweater C. breakfast

( )4. candy

A. face B. Danny C. name

( )5. like

A. is B. in C. behind

二、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. Lily and Danny _____ (be) eating some rice.
2. They _____ (be not) doing their homework.
3. The boys are _____ (have) fun.
4. Tom _____ (walk) to school every morning.
5. May I _____ (have) some hamburgers?

三、单项选择。

( )1. _____ I play with you?

A. May B. Is C. Am

( )2. The boy is playing football _____ his friends.

A. to B. for C. with

( )3. What _____ they doing?

A. am B. is C. are

( )4. I can't find Danny. _____ is he?

A. Who B. Where C. What

( )5. The man _____ me is _____ a book.

A. behind; reading

B. beside; look

C. behind; reads

四、朗读对话，选择与对话内容相符的图片。

( )1. —Look! What are they doing?

—They're playing cards.

A.  B. 

( )2. —Who is drawing?

—The girl behind me is drawing.

A.  B. 

( )3. —What are you doing?

—We are flying kites. We are having fun.

A.  B. 

( )4. —May I read the newspaper? —Sure.

A.  B. 

( )5. —Where is the baby?

—He is sleeping in bed.

A.  B. 

五、连词成句。

1. are there you (.)

_____

2. can't I dog my find (.)

_____

3. I play cards with may you (?)

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. is what now woman the doing (?)

_____

5. me behind the reading woman is (.)

_____

六、选择合适的选项，补全对话。

Mary: I can't see the tigers. Can you see them?

Bruce: 1. _____

Mary: 2. _____

Bruce: Look! They are under a big tree.

Mary: 3. _____

Bruce: They are swimming.

Mary: 4. _____

Bruce: Yes. They like swimming in summer. Because it's too hot.

Mary: 5. _____

Bruce: No, I don't. They are terrible(可怕的).

A. Do you like tigers?
B. Yes, I can.
C. What are they doing?
D. Where are they?
E. Do they like swimming?

七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

The Smiths are going on a trip to Beijing. Now they are in a hotel. Mr. Smith is reading a book. He wants to know some information about Beijing. Mrs. Smith is ordering lunch online. Their son wants to play cards with his sister, but his sister is drawing pictures. She says, "I don't want to play cards. Let's draw a picture together." "OK," says the little boy.

(　　)1. Where are the Smiths?
A. In a park.　　B. In a hotel.
C. On a square.

(　　)2. What does the word "information" mean in Chinese?
A. 知识　　B. 信息　　C. 看法

(　　)3. Is Mrs. Smith cooking lunch?
A. Yes, she is.　　B. No, she isn't.
C. We don't know.

(　　)4. The little boy wants to _____.
A. play cards with his sister
B. read a book　　C. have lunch

(　　)5. The boy and the girl _____ at last.
A. play cards　　B. read a book
C. draw a picture

八、写作技能提升练。

下课了，操场上多热闹啊！请你根据图片，用现在进行时介绍同学们在操场上的欢乐情景。不少于5句话。



_____

_____

_____

口语能力PK台

一、同学们，你们认识下面这些标牌吗？请你用祈使句告诉大家这些标牌的意义。

口语测评

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 

二、两人一组，根据图片和例句问答。

例：—What is he doing?
—He is running.



1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 6 Danny Is Lost! ☞(答案见99页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据课本内容，完成下列任务。

(教材第12～13页)

(一) 根据短文内容选择正确答案。

(　　)1. How do Danny, Jenny, Li Ming and Mrs. Li go to the train station?

A. 　B. 

C. 

(　　)2. What would Danny like to buy?

A. 　B. 　C. 

(　　)3. How many tickets do they need?

A. Three.　B. Four.　C. Five.

(　　)4. Who looks for Danny?

A. Mrs. Li.　B. Jenny.　C. Mr. Li.

(　　)5. How does Danny feel on the train?

A. He feels tired.

B. He feels hungry.

C. He feels thirsty.

(二)判断下列句子与短文内容是否相符，相符打“√”，不符打“×”。

(　　)1. Mrs. Li gets the tickets.

(　　)2. Jenny is worried because Danny is lost.

(　　)3. They say good-bye to Mr. Li.

(　　)4. Danny runs to the bus.

(三) 根据课本内容，选词(组)填空，补全短文。

runs to　jumps　buying fruit
going on a trip　looks for　stand

Jenny, Danny, Li Ming and Mrs. Li are __1__ to Beijing. They __2__ beside the train and say good-bye to Mr. Li. Jenny can't find Danny. Mr. Li __3__ Danny at the train station. There is Danny. He is __4__. Then Danny __5__ the train. Danny __6__ on the train.

1. _____　2. _____

3. _____　4. _____

5. _____　6. _____

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

Father and Sam are sitting at the table. They are having breakfast. “I don't like this soup. I don't want any,” says Sam and he puts down the spoon(勺子). “All right,” says Father. After breakfast, Sam works on the farm with his father. They work very hard. In the afternoon, Father gives him a bowl of soup. “Oh, the soup is nice. I like it very much,” says Sam. “It's the same soup,” says his father.

(　　)1. Sam doesn't like the soup at first.

(　　)2. Sam works hard on the farm.

(　　)3. Sam goes to school after breakfast.

(　　)4. Father gives Sam some nice meat in the afternoon.

(　　)5. In the afternoon, Sam thinks the soup is nice.

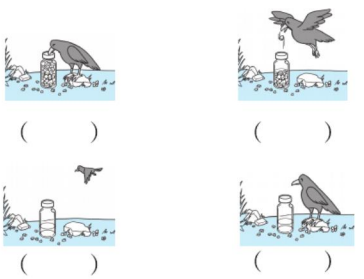
三、阅读短文，完成任务。

This is an old story about a crow(乌鸦). It is very hot and dry. The sun is shining all day. A crow is very thirsty. Suddenly he sees a jar(敞口瓶) with a little(一点) water. But the mouth of the jar is too small and he can't reach the water.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

He thinks and thinks. Later, he has a good idea (主意). He sees some little stones and drops them into the jar one by one. The water in the jar rises(上升). At last, he can drink the water. How clever(聪明的) he is!

(一)按照故事发生的顺序,用1—4给下列图片排序。



(　　)　(　　)

(　　)　(　　)

(二)根据短文内容填空,完成句子。

1. The weather is _____ and _____.
2. There is _____ _____ water in the jar.
3. The mouth of the jar is _____ _____.
4. The crow _____ little stones and drops them into the jar.
5. The crow is very _____.

四、阅读短文,完成任务。

It is a nice day. The wind is not too strong. Three kites are flying high in the blue sky. Kylie is a beautiful(美丽的) kite. She has many colours and a long tail. The second kite is Karla. She is strong. She can fly very high in the sky. Everybody looks at them. They say, "Nice, nice!" But the third kite, Kristy, is not beautiful. She is not fast. She is not strong. No one(没有人) likes her. She feels sad.

Kristy sees a boy. He is swimming in the river. But he can't swim well and he needs some help. Kristy calls, "Kylie and Karla, the boy needs help." But they can't hear(听见). Kristy is afraid (害怕) of water, but she wants to help the boy. She flies very low(低). A man hears Kristy and he swims to the boy. He helps the boy. Now everyone looks at Kristy. No one remembers(记得) beautiful Kylie and strong Karla. But everyone remembers Kristy.

(一)根据短文内容,判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. There are three kites in the sky.

(　　)2. Kristy is beautiful and strong.

(　　)3. At first, Kristy is sad, because no one likes her.

(　　)4. Kylie and Karla see the boy but they don't want to help.

(　　)5. Everyone likes Kristy at last(最后).

(二)根据短文内容,选择正确答案。

(　　)1. How's the weather today?

A. It's rainy.　　B. It's windy.

C. It's snowy.

(　　)2. Who can fly very high?

A. Kylie.　　B. Karla.

C. The three kites.

(　　)3. Who hears Kristy?

A. A man.　　B. Karla.　　C. Kylie.

(　　)4. Kristy _____ but she wants to help the boy.

A. is not afraid of water

B. can't fly low

C. is afraid of water

(　　)5. Kylie and Karla may feel _____ at last.

A. proud(骄傲的)

B. ashamed(羞愧的)

C. happy

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Again, Please!

☞(答案见99页)

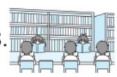
听力专练

听力专练

一、听录音，选出正确的图片。

( )1. A.  B.  C. 

( )2. A.  B.  C. 

( )3. A.  B.  C. 

( )4. A.  B.  C. 

( )5. A.  B.  C. 

二、听录音，判断下列句子与所听内容句意是否相符，相符写“T”，不相符写“F”。

( )1. Don't sing in the library.

( )2. The girl under the tree is playing with a cat.

( )3. The man would like some chicken.

( )4. Jenny is flying a kite.

( )5. My father is reading a newspaper.

三、听录音，选择正确的答语。

( )1. A. The girls are singing.
B. The baby is crying.

( )2. A. I'd like some vegetables.
B. Yes, please.

( )3. A. Yes, she is. B. No, I'm not.

( )4. A. No, I am thirsty.
B. Sure.

( )5. A. They are playing football.
B. They are hungry. They want to eat.

四、听录音，选择正确答案。

( )1. What time is it now?
A. It's Saturday morning.
B. It's 10:00 in the morning.
C. It's 10:00 in the evening.

( )2. What is Lily doing?
A. She is talking to Grandmother.
B. She is reading books.
C. She is doing her homework.

( )3. What is Mother doing?
A. She is cooking for breakfast.
B. She is shopping for lunch.
C. She is washing the vegetables.

( )4. What would Lily like?
A. She would like rice and fish.
B. She would like meat, vegetables and noodles.
C. She would like tomatoes, eggs and rice.

( )5. What would Grandmother like?
A. She would like some fish and rice.
B. She would like some eggs and noodles.
C. She would like some fish and pears.

读写专练

五、读一读，猜一猜，写出单词。

1. It is a kind of drink. Sometimes the colour is brown. You put the dried(干燥的) leaves into hot water. It is the _____.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. It is sweet. There is a word "can" in it. You shouldn't(不应该) eat too much, because it is bad for your teeth. It is the _____.

3. This is a very young child. He or she can't speak or walk. Sometimes he or she likes to cry. This is the _____.

4. You don't have breakfast or lunch. Now, you want to eat food very much. Because you are _____.

5. This is an action(动作). You use a pencil or a pen and some crayons to make a beautiful picture. This action is "_____".

六、读一读，选择正确的单词，并用其适当形式填空，补全短文。

be swim play picture what tree talk

In our classroom, there is a 1. _____ of a park on the wall. In the park, there 2. _____ a river. Near the river, there are flowers and many 3. _____. Under the trees, there are some old men. They are drinking tea and 4. _____. Are there any young men? Let me see. Yes, there are some. They are 5. _____ in the river. 6. _____ are the boys doing in the picture? They are 7. _____ football.

七、阅读短文，回答问题。

Lisa's birthday is on November 20. It's on Wednesday. She is going to have a birthday party. Her friends Peter, Gao Wei and Li Yan will come to her home after school. Now Lisa's parents are shopping. They want to buy a birthday cake and some fruit and candy for the birthday party.

Mum: What kind(种类) of cake would you like?

Lisa: I'd like a fruit cake, please.

Dad: What shape(形状) would you like? A round(圆形) one or a star one?

Lisa: I'd like the star cake. How nice!

Mum: Would you like some ice cream, Lisa?

Lisa: Yes. And I'd like some drinks, too.

Mum: OK.

Dad: Look at these balloons(气球). Would you like some?

Lisa: Yes, please. Thank you, Dad and Mum. I will have a great birthday party.

1. When is Lisa's birthday?

_____

2. Who will come to Lisa's birthday party?

_____

3. What kind of cake would Lisa like?

_____

4. Is the cake a round one or a star one?

_____

5. Does Lisa like the balloons?

_____

八、认真观察表格，根据获得的信息，写一写Tim一家正在进行的活动，不少于5句话。

	play cards	wash the clothes	make lunch	draw a picture
Father		√		
Mother			√	
Brother	√			
Sister	√			
Tim				√

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 In Beijing

Lesson 7 Arriving in Beijing ☞(答案见99页)

一、名词的复数变化有不同的情况，请根据这些不同情况将下列单词分类。（写序号）

1.  2.  3.  4. 

pens　　classes　　men　　police

A. dress	B. pencil	C. book	D. child
E. sheep	F. brush	G. boy	H. deer
I. bag	J. box	K. woman	

二、火眼金睛，选出正确的一项。

1. There _____ (is　are) some boys in the park.
2. They are _____ (on　in) their way to the hotel.
3. Look! Some _____ (child　children) are flying kites.　【特殊记忆法】
4. _____ (A　Many) people are on the square.
5. _____ (These　This) girl is running.

三、选择正确的选项。

(　　)1. There is _____ in the tree.
A. birds　B. a bird　C. an apple

(　　)2. The children are doing _____ homework.
A. they　B. his　C. their

(　　)3. —Is the _____ listening to music?
—Yes, he is.
A. girl　B. boy　C. men

(　　)4. These _____ are shopping in the supermarket.
A. woman　B. womans　C. women

(　　)5. The man in red shorts _____.
A. is running　B. are running　C. run

四、读一读，选出与句子相符的图片。

(　　)1. A girl is dancing.
(　　)2. These girls are singing.
(　　)3. A boy is flying a kite.
(　　)4. Some children are playing football.
(　　)5. Some old men are doing Tai Chi.

A. 　B. 　C. 

D. 　E. 

五、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

(　　)1. When do they arrive in Beijing?
(　　)2. What do you think of Beijing?
(　　)3. How many boys are there in your class?
(　　)4. What are the children doing?
(　　)5. Where are they?

A. They are on their way to the restaurant.
B. Beijing is great.
C. They arrive in Beijing at 2:00 in the afternoon.
D. There are 23 boys in my class.
E. They are reading books in the classroom.

六、看图，根据例句写句子。　【举一反三法】

例：

This is a woman. She is singing.

These are women. They are singing.

1. 　2. 　3. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. This is a child. He is cleaning the room.

_____

2. This is a man. He is running.

_____

3. This is a boy. He is playing football.

_____

七、连词成句。

1. when do get the to they restaurant (?)

_____

2. on the they their are hotel to way (.)

_____

3. children reading books some are now (.)

_____

4. people there in the park are many (.)

_____

5. old some are singing dancing women and (.)

_____

八、阅读理解。

(一)阅读短文,按要求做题。

My mother and I arrive in Shanghai at 2:30 in the afternoon. On our way to the hotel, we see many people in the park. Some old women are singing and dancing. Some children are playing football. There is a man writing calligraphy (书法) on the ground. Guess what he is using instead of (代替) ink? Water! That's very interesting. I want to go to the square and try it myself.

(　　)1. What do they see on their way to the hotel?

A.  B.  C. 

(　　)2. The old man is writing calligraphy with _____.

A. ink　　B. water　　C. juice

(　　)3. What does the word "ink" mean in Chinese?

A. 水　　B. 颜料　　C. 墨水

4. 把画线部分翻译成汉语。

_____

5. What are the children doing?

_____

(二)阅读短文,选择正确答案。

Today is Sunday. On Sundays, I usually play the piano (弹钢琴). My father usually reads the newspaper. My mother usually cleans the house. But today my mother is in bed. She is ill (有病). My father has to do the housework. Now, he is cleaning the house. "Sam, can you help me?" "Yes, Dad." Now we're washing the car. What is my sister Amy doing? She is playing the piano.

(　　)1. What day is today?

A. Sunday.　　B. Monday.

C. Tuesday.

(　　)2. What does Sam usually do on Sundays?

A. He usually reads the newspaper.

B. He usually plays the piano.

C. He usually cleans the house.

(　　)3. Why does Dad do the housework today?

A. Because he likes to do it.

B. Because Sam can help him.

C. Because Mum is ill.

(　　)4. What is Sam's sister doing?

A. She is washing the car.

B. She is playing the piano.

C. She is helping their dad.

(　　)5. Which is right?

A. Sam's father and Sam are busy this Sunday.

B. Sam's mother is lazy (懒惰的).

C. Sam's sister helps to do the housework.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 8 Tian'anmen Square ☞(答案见100页)

一、读一读，选出不同类的一项。

( )1. A. say B. walk C. sad
( )2. A. big B. help C. worry
( )3. A. easy B. square C. difficult
( )4. A. playing B. flying C. hurts
( )5. A. men B. baby C. children

二、核心素养练

同学们，在英语中有很多单词都有反义词或对应词。把它们归类在一起记，既容易又有趣，可以达到事半功倍的效果。请来试一试吧！

给画线单词选择反义词或对应词补全句子。

( )1. This apple is small. That watermelon is _____.
A. green B. big C. sweet

( )2. Flying a kite is easy. Riding a bike is _____.
A. difficult B. interesting C. good

( )3. Some men are running. Some _____ are dancing.
A. children B. girls C. women

( )4. I jump very low, but Li Ming can jump _____.
A. fast B. up C. high

( )5. I ask the question. You _____ it, please.
A. say B. answer C. worry

三、用所给词的正确形式填空，补全句子。

1. These _____ (girl) are flying kites on the square.
2. Let's _____ (play) basketball with our friends.
3. There are many _____ (child) in the park.
4. Poor Danny. He _____ (hurt) his arm.
5. Some people are _____ (take) pictures.

四、读一读，选择正确的答案。

( )1. Xiaoming can't do his homework. His parents _____ about him.
A. happy B. worry C. answer

( )2. This question is difficult. I need some _____.
A. picture B. hurt C. help

( )3. He _____, "I can fly a kite very high."
A. says B. asks C. plays

( )4. There _____ a boy in the classroom. 【固定句型法】
A. am B. is C. are

( )5. Danny _____ fly a kite. He is sad. 【导学号 8582825】
A. can B. can't C. don't

五、朗读句子或对话，选择合适的图片。

( )1. —Are you OK?
—No. I hurt my leg.

A.  B. 

( )2. —Can you ride a bike?
—Yes. It's easy.

A.  B. 

( )3. —What are these people doing?
—They are taking pictures.

A.  B. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)4. Tian'anmen Square is very big.

A. 　B. 

(　　)5. —How do you feel?

—I feel sad.

A. 　B. 

六、根据情境选择恰当而得体的句子。

(　　)1. 你的朋友在操场上跑步不小心摔倒了,这时你跑过去会说:

A. Don't worry. I can help you.

B. Can you help me?

(　　)2. 你认为骑自行车太难了,你会说:

A. Riding a bike is difficult.

B. Riding a bike is easy.

(　　)3. 你和朋友看到公园里有很多人,回家后你想告诉爸爸妈妈,你会说:

A. There are some children in the park.

B. There are many people in the park.

(　　)4. 你想和朋友一起去散步,你可以这样邀请你的朋友:

A. Let's go to run.

B. Let's go for a walk.

(　　)5. 有人不小心掉进河里,他会大声喊:

A. Help! Help!

B. Look out!

七、选择合适的选项补全对话。

Sarah: Hi, Liu Yun. How are you? 1. _____

Liu Yun: I failed (没有通过) the math test.

Sarah: 2. _____ I'm sure you can do better next time.

Liu Yun: Thank you. I hear you are going on a trip. 3. _____

Sarah: I am excited.

Liu Yun: Where are you going?

Sarah: 4. _____

Liu Yun: Oh, wonderful! 5. _____

Sarah: This Saturday.

A. How do you feel?
B. I am going to Beijing.
C. When are you going?
D. You look sad.
E. Don't worry.

八、阅读短文,回答问题。

There is a park near our school. We can see many trees and flowers there. Some flowers are red and some are yellow. We can see a hill(小山) behind the park. At the foot of the hill, we can see a river. There are some boats on it. Children like to go there.

It is Sunday today. The weather is warm and windy. There are many students in the park. Some are dancing. Some are walking and singing. Some boys are playing games. Ann and her sister Kate are flying a kite. Tom and his pet dog are jumping. Peter and Sam are sitting under a big tree. They are having a good time.

1. Where is the park?

_____

2. What can you see at the foot of the hill?

_____

3. What day is it today?

_____

4. What are the boys doing?

_____

5. Who is sitting under the tree?

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 9 The Palace Museum

☞(答案见 100 页)

一、根据图片选出括号中合适的单词或短语，补全句子。

1. May I _____ (take your picture/draw a picture)?



2. —How's the weather?
—It's _____ (sunny/windy).



3. He _____ (hurts his arm / flies a kite). He is sad.



4. The apple is _____ (falling / running).



5. Many people like to visit the _____ (Palace Museum / Summer Palace).



二、读一读，选择正确答案。

( )1. The teacher is looking _____ the window.
A. of B. out C. in

( )2. It's rainy today. Look! Rain _____.
A. fall B. is falling C. falls

( )3. You can't run on the street. Please ____.
A. careful B. are careful
C. be careful

( )4. —Where are you?
—I am standing _____ our teacher.
A. beside B. under C. from

( )5. May I take _____ picture, Mum?
【固定搭配法】
A. you B. yours C. your

三、读对话，给问句选择正确的疑问词，并写在横线上。(有多余选项)

How How old How many How much
What colour What Who Where When

1. —_____ is the weather today?
—It's sunny.
2. —_____ is the Palace Museum?
—It's red and yellow.
3. —_____ is the library?
—It's about 90 years old.
4. —_____ do you see in the rooms?
—Some pictures.
5. —_____ hurts his tail? —Danny.

四、看图，选择与图片相符的句子或对话。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

( )1. A. —How old is your sister?
—She is three years old.
B. —How is your sister?
—She is sad.

( )2. A. Bill can take pictures. It's easy.
B. Let me take your picture. Say cheese.

( )3. A. The boy is falling off the bike.
B. The boy is dancing and singing.

( )4. A. Jill hurts her arm.
B. Her head hurts.

( )5. A. Please stand beside the tree.
B. Please stand behind the tree.

五、连词成句。

1. hurts my her finger sister (.)

_____

2. see do you the room in what (?)

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. ride may I bike your (?)

_____

4. look window let's the in (!)

_____

5. some pens there pencil one on are desk and the(.)

_____

_____

六、选择正确的选项补全对话。

A: It is Saturday. And the weather is good.

1. _____

B: I am going to the Palace Museum.

A: Great. 2. _____

B: Certainly.

A: 3. _____

B: It's about 600 years old.

A: Cool. What's in it?

B: 4. _____

A: Great. Let's go.

A. There are many rooms in it.
B. Where are you going?
C. May I go with you?
D. How old is the Palace Museum?

七、核心素养练

同学们,你们了解故宫吗?故宫又称紫禁城,被誉为世界五大宫之首。占地约72万平方米,有大约600年的历史。故宫有午门(正门)、西华门、东华门和神武门四个大门。

请你阅读有关故宫的英文材料,并回答问题。

Hello, I'm Xiaochen. Welcome to the Palace Museum. The Palace Museum is very old. It was built(建造) from 1406 to 1420. Look at this picture. Can you see Tian'anmen Square? Tian'anmen Square is in front of the Palace Museum. The Palace Museum is very large(大的). Do you know how large it is? It's about 720,000 ㎡. People say there are 999 rooms in the Palace Museum. But this is not right. It has about 9000 rooms in it. There are four gates(大门) in the Palace Museum. It's so great!

1. How old is the Palace Museum?

_____

2. Where is the Palace Museum?

_____

3. How many rooms are there in the Palace Museum?

_____

4. How many gates are there in the Palace Museum?

_____

八、阅读短文,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

There are many places of interest in Beijing, such as the Great Wall, the Palace Museum and Tian'anmen Square. But I think the most beautiful place is the Summer Palace(颐和园). It is in the northwest(西北) of Beijing. It was built more than 200 years ago. Kunming Lake is famous for its clear water. People like going boating there. And around the lake, people sit under the trees, or take a walk. Wanshou Mountain is also very beautiful. When you are at the top(顶端), you will find a new world.

( )1. Beijing has many places of interest.

( )2. The Palace Museum was built more than two hundred years ago.

( )3. The Summer Palace is in the southeast of Beijing.

( )4. People can't go boating on Kunming Lake.

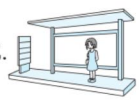
( )5. Wanshou Mountain is very beautiful.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 10 The Great Wall ☞(答案见100页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词，并给句子选择相应的图片。

A.  B.  C. 

D.  E. 

( )1. It's 36℃. I f_____ very hot.

( )2. The traffic light is red now. Please s_____.

( )3. Now, he is on the Great Wall. He is very t_____.

( )4. She is w_____ for a bus at the bus stop.

( )5. The girl is a_____ of the snake.

二、选词，并用其正确形式填空。

take feel be kilometer bus

1. I need to _____ a car to go to school.
2. There are too many _____ on the street.
3. Danny _____ tired. He is sitting on a chair.
4. Don't _____ afraid. I can help you.
5. It is about 300 _____ from Shijiazhuang to Beijing.

三、核心素养练

英语中有一些单词非常神奇，因为它们具有不同的含义，所以同学们要根据具体的语境理解单词的含义。

请你写出画线单词的含义。

1. I like this dress. I will take it. _____
2. The hotel is far from the park. We need to take a bus. _____
3. These flowers are beautiful. I want to take a picture. _____
4. Excuse me, where is the bus stop? _____
5. Stop! Don't go there. _____

四、读一读，选择正确的答案。

( )1. _____ the way back home, I feel tired and hungry. 【固定短语法】

A. In B. On C. At

( )2. There _____ some chairs, some desks and a blackboard in the classroom.

A. is B. are C. am

( )3. _____! I _____ a red hotel. 【同义词辨析法】

A. Look; look B. Look; see

C. See; see

( )4. My home is far from the school. I _____ take a bus.

A. needs B. need to C. needing

( )5. —_____ is the river?

—It's about 500 metres long.

A. How long B. How far C. How old

五、读一读，为下列问句选择相应的答语。

( )1. Do you know the man beside Mr. Li?

( )2. How do you go to Beijing?

( )3. How long is the Great Wall?

( )4. How old is your mother?

( )5. How do you feel?

A. I feel hot and tired.
B. It's about 6000 kilometres.
C. Yes. He is my English teacher.
D. I go there by train.
E. She is 35 years old.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

六、按要求完成句子。

1. My grandpa is 80 years old.
（对画线部分提问）

_____

2. He runs to the classroom.（改为现在进行时）

_____

3. Be afraid to speak English.（改为否定句）

_____

4. need to they take taxi a (.)
（连词成句）

_____

5. long how scarf is the yellow (?)
（连词成句）

_____

七、阅读理解。

（一）阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Betty is a cute girl. Today she goes to the city to visit her aunt. There are so many hotels and restaurants in the city. She can't find the way to her aunt's house. She is lost（迷路的）. She wants to cross（穿过）the street. But there are too many buses and cars. She feels afraid. She stops in the middle（中间）of the street. A policeman comes and helps her cross the street. Then he tells（告诉）Betty how to get to her aunt's house. Betty says "thank you" and then she gets there safely（安全地）. Her aunt is happy to see Betty.

(　　)1. Betty goes to visit her _____.
A. aunt　B. friend　C. sister

(　　)2. Betty is lost. She feels _____.
A. afraid　B. happy　C. careful

(　　)3. Who helps Betty cross the street?
A. A policeman.
B. Her aunt.
C. A teacher.

(　　)4. Does Betty get to her aunt's house safely?
A. No, she doesn't.
B. Yes, she does.
C. I don't know.

(　　)5. How does Betty's aunt feel to see her?
A. She feels afraid.
B. She feels happy.
C. She feels sad.

（二）阅读短文，回答问题。

The Great Wall

The Great Wall is the longest wall in the world. It is about 6000 kilometers long, 7 meters high and 5 meters wide（宽的）. And the Great Wall has a history of about 2000 years. It was very difficult to build the Great Wall in ancient（古代的）times. Many men died（死亡）because of the wall. It is very famous in the world. Many foreigners（外国人）come to visit it every year. They like it very much.

1. Is the Great Wall the longest wall in the world?

_____

2. How long is the Great Wall?

_____

3. Was it easy or difficult to build the Great Wall?

_____

4. Is the Great Wall famous in the world?

_____

5. Do you like the Great Wall? Why?
（按实际情况回答）

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 11 Shopping in Beijing

☞(答案见100页)

一、读一读，从句子中找出含有例词画线部分读音的单词。

1. Danny hurts his tail but he likes to go shopping.
   stop:_____
2. I feel hungry. I want to buy two hot dogs to eat.
   but:_____
3. My teacher is kind to us.
   kite:_____
4. —What day is today? —It's Thursday.
   hurt:_____
5. Can you make a cake?
   sad:_____

二、读一读，选择正确答案。

(　　)1. Tom loves _____ on Sundays.

【固定搭配法】

A. go shopping　　B. going shopping

C. goes to shop

(　　)2. I'm tired. I can't walk _____ too many bags.

A. and　　B. of　　C. with

(　　)3. —_____ is it now?

—It's 8:00. Time for school.

A. What colour

B. How many

C. What time

(　　)4. My mother has no time. She is so _____.

【导学号8582825】

A. busy　　B. happy　　C. good

(　　)5. My arm hurts. The policeman helps me. He is very _____.

A. afraid　　B. kind　　C. sad

三、按要求写单词补全句子。

1. I have a brother. He _____ a sister.
   (画线单词第三人称单数)
2. He wants to buy some fruit _____ bike.
   (画线单词的同音词)
3. My little sister is five years old. Today is her _____ birthday. (画线单词的序数词)
4. My grandfather is old. My brother is _____.
   (画线单词的反义词)
5. There is a bee around you. _____ careful.
   (画线单词的同音词)

四、看图，根据例句写句子。

例： father 

—What do you want to buy for your father?

—I want to buy a T-shirt for my father.

1.  mother 

—What do you want to buy for your mother?

—_____

2.  brother 

—_____

—I want to buy a kite for my brother.

3.  sister 

—_____

—_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、选择合适的单词并用其正确形式补全短文。

look　buy　sun　shop　feel　wait

It's Sunday today. The weather is __1__ and warm. The Greens are __2__ on the street. Mrs. Green likes to go shopping. She __3__ in many shops. She wants __4__ a dress for her daughter. But Mr. Green doesn't love shopping. He __5__ tired. Now he is sitting on a chair. He is __6__ for Mrs. Green.

1. _____　2. _____　3. _____

4. _____　5. _____　6. _____

六、选择合适的选项补全对话。

A: What day is it today?

B: 1. _____ It's Mother's Day tomorrow.

A: Oh, I want to buy a new dress for my mother in the shopping centre.

B: 2. _____

A: It's in front of the cinema.

B: 3. _____

A: Yes. 4. _____

B: I want to buy a T-shirt for my mother. 5. _____

A: Sure. Let's go.

A. Can I go there with you?
B. Where is the shopping centre?
C. It's only 5 minutes' walk.
D. It's Saturday.
E. Is it near here?

七、阅读短文，补全表格。

In this summer holiday, my mother, father and I go to Hong Kong (香港). We visit many places of interest and buy many gifts. I buy a toy car for my little brother and a doll for my cousin. My father buys a shirt for my grandfather and some delicious snacks (小吃) for my grandmother. My mother buys a watch for my father. But she doesn't tell him. It is a surprise for my father. She also buys a beautiful dress for me. I like it very much.

Who	What to buy	For whom
I	a toy car	my little brother
	1. _____	2. _____
my father	3. _____	4. _____
	snacks	5. _____
my mother	6. _____	7. _____
	8. _____	me

八、写作技能提升练。

请描述一次你和父母的旅行。写清楚你们参观了什么地方？做了什么？看到了什么？要求：不少于5句话。

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

口语能力PK台

一、根据图片和例子说一说。

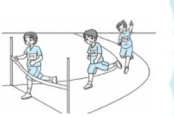
口语测评

例：

There are some boys.

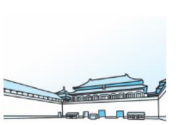
They are playing football.

1. 

2. 

二、看图，回答问题。

1. Where is it?
2. How old is it?
3. What colour is it?



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 12 A Visit to the Great Wall ☞(答案见101页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据课本中的故事完成下列任务。

(教材第30~31页)

(一)判断下列句子与故事内容是否相符。相符的写T,不符写F。

(　　)1. Danny hurts his tail, so(所以)he doesn't go to the Great Wall.

(　　)2. The Great Wall is also called "The Ten-Thousand-Li Great Wall".

(　　)3. There are some interesting things about the Great Wall.

(　　)4. If(如果) you want to be a true man, write your name on the wall.

(　　)5. The Great Wall is a wonderful place to visit.

(二)根据故事内容,选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. How do they go to the Great Wall?

A. 　B. 　C. 

(　　)2. How old is the oldest part of the Great Wall?

A. It's 6000 years old.

B. It's more than 2000 years old.

C. It's less than(不到) 2000 years old.

(　　)3. What's the Chinese saying about the Great Wall?

A. One apple a day keeps the doctor away.

B. Still waters run deep.

C. He who doesn't go to the Great Wall is not a true man.

(　　)4. How does Jenny feel to see the Great Wall?

A. She feels lucky.

B. She feels tired.

C. She feels sad.

(　　)5. What should(应该) you do when you are visiting a place?

A. I should shout(喊叫) to let others know I am here.

B. I should write my name on a tree.

C. I should keep it clean and beautiful.

(三)根据课文内容,以及自己的亲身经历写出保持旅游景点卫生干净的几点建议。

_____

_____

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文,完成任务。

There is a pig. Her name is Pinky. Today Pinky looks sad. Oh, what's the matter with Pinky? Pop says, "Pinky likes carrots and her ball." He gives three carrots and a big ball to Pinky. But Rose says, "Pinky likes apples and her umbrella." She gives some apples and a pink umbrella to Pinky. But Pinky looks sad and hot. "Oh, I know," says Rose. "Pinky likes water." She gets the hose(水管). Now Pinky is happy. She loves water.

(一)按照故事发生的顺序用1—5给图片排序。

(　　)　(　　)　(　　)

(　　)　(　　)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(二)根据短文内容,选择正确的答案。

(　　)1. Who is Pinky?

A. She is a rabbit.

B. She is a pig.

C. She is a girl.

(　　)2. What does Pop give to Pinky?

A.  B.  C. 

(　　)3. Why does Pinky feel sad?

A. Because she is hungry.

B. Because she is hot.

C. Because she can't find her ball.

(　　)4. What does Pinky love?

A.  B.  C. 

三、阅读短文,完成任务。

There is a dog. His name is Bingo. He loves bones very much. One day, he is walking in the park. He finds a big bone(骨头) in the grass. The bone is very heavy(沉的), but he doesn't want any help. Why? Because he doesn't want his friends to eat any of the bone.

"I will go to the forest to eat the bone. It is far from the park. My friends can't find me." he thinks. So he walks to the forest with the bone in his mouth. On the way to the forest, he sees a big lake. He looks in the water. He sees a dog. The dog has a big bone. "That bone is bigger(更大). I want my bone and that bone, too." He looks at the dog in the lake, and the dog in the lake looks at him, too. "Give me your bone!" he barks(吠叫) at the dog in the lake. What happens? His bone falls into the lake. He has no bones now. He is sad.

(一)根据故事内容,给下列句子排序。

(　　) Bingo is sad.

(　　) Bingo finds a big bone in the park.

(　　) He wants to eat the bone in the forest.

(　　) He barks at the dog in the lake.

(　　) He loses(失去) his bone.

(　　) He sees a dog in the lake.

(二)根据短文内容,选择正确答案。

(　　)1. Why does Bingo go to the forest?

A. Because the forest is beautiful.

B. Because he doesn't want his friends to eat the bone.

C. Because his friends are in the forest.

(　　) 2. What does he see on the way to the forest?

A. A big river.

B. A big farm.

C. A big lake.

(　　)3. Why does Bingo bark at the dog in the lake?

A. Because the dog in the lake is not kind(友善的) to Bingo.

B. Because Bingo wants to be friends with the dog in the lake.

C. Because Bingo wants his bone.

(　　)4. Is there a dog in the lake?

A. Yes, there is.

B. No, there isn't.

C. I don't know.

(　　)5. What do you learn from the story?

A. We should(应该) learn to share(分享).

B. We shouldn't want two bones.

C. We should eat in the park but not in the forest.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Again, Please! ☞(答案见101页)

听力专练

听力专练

一、听录音，选出正确的图片。 【听关键词法】

( )1. A.  B.  C. 

( )2. A.  B.  C. 

( )3. A.  B.  C. 

( )4. A.  B.  C. 

( )5. A.  B.  C. 

二、听录音，选出你所听问句的答语。

( )1. A. They like Beijing Duck very much.
B. They arrive at 9:00.
C. Yes, they do.

( )2. A. They are dancing.
B. They like to dance.
C. She is singing.

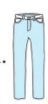
( )3. A. He is 16 years old.
B. It's about 600 kilometers long.
C. It's about 600 years old.

( )4. A. They are under the tree.
B. They are old and great.
C. They are yellow and red.

( )5. A. I see some children.
B. Say cheese, please.
C. It's large and beautiful.

三、听录音，匹配相关内容并连线。

1.  Jenny
2.  Tom
3.  Lily
4.  Bruce

A.  B.  C. 

D. 

四、听录音，填空完成句子。

1. I have a lot of homework. I am very _____ now.
2. Don't be _____. I can help you.
3. Listen! A boy is calling for _____.
4. These _____ are playing football.
5. _____. There are too many cars.

读写专练

五、读一读，猜一猜，写有关地方的短语。

1. It is in Beijing. It's about 600 years old. There are many rooms in it. It's red and yellow. In ancient (古代的) times, the emperors lived there. What is it? _____
2. It's the longest wall in the world. It's about 6000 kilometers. It was built (建造) about 2000 years ago. What is it? _____
3. It's on the street. You are waiting for buses here. What is it? _____
4. It doesn't have a long history (历史), but it is great and famous. The 2008 Olympic Games were held (举办) here. It looks like (看起来像) a bird's nest.
What is it? _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

六、读一读，选择正确的词汇，并用其正确的形式补全短文。

do Tai Chi	on my way to	woman	can
far from	afraid of	arrive at	help

__1__ school, there is a park. It's not __2__ my home. The park is beautiful. Every Saturday morning, I ride my bike to the park. I __3__ the park at 7:00. Look! There are many people in the park. What are they doing now? Some old __4__ are dancing. Some old men are __5__. Some young men are running. What are the children doing under the tree? They are speaking English. I want to join(加入) them. But I am __6__ speaking English, because I think(认为) English is difficult. I __7__ speak English very well. A girl says to me, "Don't be afraid. We can __8__ you." I feel very happy with them.

1. _____ 2. _____
3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____ 6. _____
7. _____ 8. _____

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

The dream(梦想) in the future

It's Monday morning. We are having a class meeting now. Miss Li is sitting in the middle and all the students are around her. We are talking about dreams in the future. Gao Shan says he wants to be a policeman one day. He wants to help people a lot. Kate says she wants to be a nurse. She wants to take care of(照顾) people. Tom says he wants to be a pilot. He wants to fly in the sky. Miss Li says, "Good dreams. But we must study hard from now on. I think your dreams will come true(实现)."

(一)根据短文内容判断句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. They are having a class meeting on Friday.
(　　)2. Kate wants to be a nurse.
(　　)3. Gao Shan wants to fly in the sky.
(　　)4. We don't need to work hard and our dreams can come true.

(二)根据短文内容回答问题。

1. What are they talking about?

_____

2. What does Gao Shan want to be?

_____

3. Why does Tom want to be a pilot?

_____

4. What's your dream? Why?

_____

八、看图，根据提示写作文。 不少于5句话。



提示：

Where are the children?

What are they doing?

How do they feel?

What do you know about the place?

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Writing Home

Lesson 13 Let's Buy Postcards! ☞(答案见102页)

一、核心素养练

通过了解词义和词性可以帮助我们记忆单词。有些同类词可以在相同的情景下运用。掌握同一类词的运用情景可以达到举一反三的效果。

读下面的句子,选出可以替换画线部分的选项。

(　　)1. May I see that postcard, please?

A. Do　　B. Can　　C. Am

(　　)2. I want to send a letter to my mum.

A. an email　　B. book

C. picture

(　　)3. I am writing a postcard to my friend.

A. sending　　B. buy　　C. has

(　　)4. There is a computer on the desk.

A. paper　　B. TV　　C. cards

(　　)5. How much is this postcard?

A. those　　B. these　　C. that

二、读一读,选一选。

(　　)1. The shop _____ many postcards.

A. has　　B. have　　C. having

(　　)2. On Mother's Day, I send flowers _____ my mother.　【固定搭配法】

A. from　　B. for　　C. to

(　　)3. She _____ buy some gifts for her friends.

A. want to　　B. wants

C. wants to

(　　)4. He is buying a pencil. He is in a _____.

A. zoo　　B. shop　　C. park

(　　)5. I like it very much. I'll _____ it.

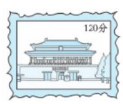
A. buys　　B. take　　C. give

三、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. I can draw a picture on _____ (paper).
2. Look at those _____ (picture).
3. May I _____ (look) at that card?
4. Let's _____ (write) a letter to Danny.
5. How much _____ (be) these postcards?

四、看图补全句子。

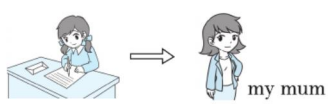
1. This stamp has a _____ of the Palace Museum.



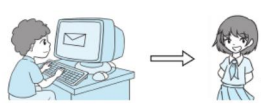
2. This stamp has _____.



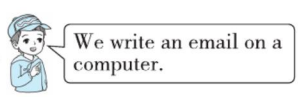
3. I want to send _____ to _____.

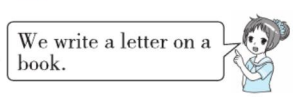


4. I want to _____.



五、小明和莉莉在讨论通信方式,请你判断他们说的话与实际是(T)否(F)相符。

(　　)1. 

(　　)2. 

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( )3.  You can buy some postcards in a restaurant.

( )4. A postcard has a picture on it. 

( )5.  We can buy some paper in a library.

六、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

( )1. Where do you buy a T-shirt?

( )2. May I see that postcard?

( )3. How much is the cap?

( )4. What do you do on the computer?

( )5. Where do you write a letter?

A. It's thirty yuan. B. On paper.
C. I write an email. D. In the shop.
E. Sure.

七、选择恰当的句子完成对话。(只填序号)

Assistant: Can I help you?

Jenny: 1. _____ I want to buy a dress.

Assistant: 2. _____

Jenny: No, I don't.

Assistant: What about the red one? It looks nice.

Jenny: 3. _____

Assistant: Okay.

Jenny: It's so beautiful. I like it very much. 4. _____

Assistant: It's 60 yuan.

Jenny: 5. _____

A. How much is it?
B. Yes, please.
C. I'll take it, please.
D. May I try it on, please?
E. Do you like this blue one?

八、阅读对话，完成任务。

Jenny: Hi, Danny!

Danny: Hello, Jenny! What are you doing now?

Jenny: I am writing an email on the computer. What about you?

Danny: I am writing a postcard. I want to send it to Steven. He is in Canada now.

Jenny: May I see your postcard?

Danny: Sure! Here you are.

Jenny: It is very beautiful. It has a picture of the Great Wall.

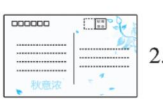
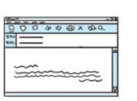
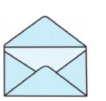
Danny: Steven likes the Great Wall very much.

Jenny: Oh, I want to buy a postcard for my friend Betty. She likes the Palace Museum. How much is your postcard?

Danny: It is three yuan. Let's go to the shop to buy some postcards. After we write them, we can send them at the post office.

Jenny: Okay. Let's go!

(一)对话中提到了哪些通信方式？请在相应的图片下方打"√"。

1.  ( ) 2.  ( ) 3.  ( )

(二)根据对话内容，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

( )1. Danny and Jenny are in Canada.

( )2. Danny's postcard has a picture of the Great Wall.

(三)根据对话内容，回答问题。

1. What is Danny doing?

_____

2. Is Jenny writing a letter?

_____

3. How much is Danny's postcard?

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 14 Jenny Writes a Postcard

☞(答案见102页)

一、核心素养练

同学们,在英语中,有很多单词是成对出现的,利用"对应性"这一特点在记忆单词的过程中适当地发挥联想,可以达到事半功倍的效果。

请你在横线上写出画线词的对应词,完成句子。

1. I want to send this postcard to my mum.

   My _____ sends an email to me.

2. My right arm hurts.

   I can put up my _____ hand.

3. Write the date _____.

   Don't forget to write the name last.

4. My house is near a park.

   But it is _____ from my school.

5. The playground is small.

   Our classroom is _____.

二、单项选择。

(　　)1. Please write the date _____ the address.

A. so　　B. but　　C. and

(　　)2. I'm sorry. I _____ to do my homework.

A. write　　B. remember

C. forget

(　　)3. I write some words _____ paper.

A. in　　B. on　　C. at

(　　)4. We put the address _____.

【导学号 8582825】

A. on the right　　B. in the left

C. at the first

(　　)5. We are having fun _____ Beijing.

A. in　　B. on　　C. at

三、请给下列对话选择正确的图片。

(　　)1. —How much is the stamp?

—Eighty fen.

(　　)2. —What are you doing?

—I'm writing a letter.

(　　)3. —How to write a postcard?

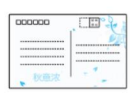
—Write the date first.

(　　)4. —Are you okay?

—No. I miss my parents.

(　　)5. —What do you want to do?

—I want to send a letter.

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

四、连词成句。

1. I　mum　dad　and　my　to　want　send　postcard　this　to (.)

_____

_____

2. Beijing　in　we　having　are　fun (.)

_____

3. you　where　do　write　postcard　on　a (?)

_____

4. forget　don't　stamp　the (.)

_____

5. the　Palace　of　Museum　it　has　picture　a (.)

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

五、给问句选择正确的答语。

( )1. Where do you write on a postcard?

A. On the left. B. On the right.

C. In the middle.

( )2. What do you write first?

A. The name. B. The date.

C. The address.

( )3. Who do you want to send the postcard to?

A. My friend. B. The zoo.

C. An email.

( )4. Where do you put the address?

A. On the left. B. On the right.

C. At the first.

六、阅读下面的选项，将其放在明信片的相应位置。（填序号）

A. We are having fun in Qingdao. The weather is hot and sunny. We can see the sea. We play in the sea. We have a big dinner in the evening. I miss you.

B. Sunday, May 31

C. Yours,

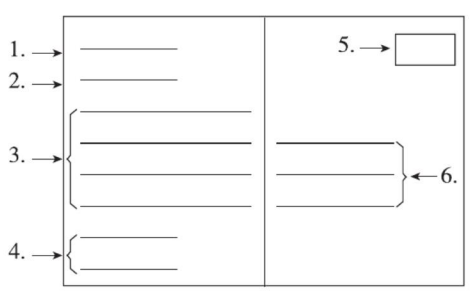
Xiaoxue

D. Wang Li

520 Zhonghua Road Shijiazhuang, Hebei, China

E. the stamp

F. Dear Mum and Dad,



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

七、阅读下面的信，选择正确答案。

Dear Dad and Mum,

Thank you very much for the new T-shirt. It is cool! I like it very much. It's very hot in Beijing now. And it's sunny today. So I can wear the new T-shirt. I have many classes in the morning. I don't have any classes in the afternoon or in the evening. So I often go to the library and read many books. There is a beautiful park near our school. On weekends, I usually go to the park. I often play football with my friends there. I hope you can tell me about your life.

I miss you!

Love,

Mike

( )1. The letter is from _____.

【关键信息定位法】

A. Dad B. Mum C. Mike

( )2. The weather in Beijing is _____.

A. cool B. warm

C. sunny and hot

( )3. Mike has _____ in the morning.

A. many classes

B. football games

C. no class

( )4. Mike often _____ in the afternoon and in the evening.

A. goes to the library

B. goes to the park

C. Both A and B.

( )5. What do Mike's parents send to Mike?

A. A letter. B. A T-shirt.

C. A postcard.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 15 Sending the Postcards ☞(答案见102页)

一、重新排列字母组成正确的单词，补全句子。

(注意大小写)

1. _____ left at the traffic lights. 

2. Mike is in China. He is _____. 

3. I have two postcards. So I _____ two stamps. 

4. How _____ is your schoolbag? 

5. Danny, you are _____. 

二、单项选择。

( )1. _____ Where's the KFC?

A. Excuse me.

B. That's all right.

C. Sure.

( )2. _____ you need any stamps?

A. Is B. Are C. Do

( )3. —Six and seven is twelve.

—_____ It's thirteen.

A. You are right.

B. That's right.

C. You are wrong.

( )4. I am _____ a letter _____ my aunt.

A. writing; at B. write; to

C. writing; to

( )5. You can see the computer room _____ the left.

A. on B. at C. for

三、核心素养练

同学们，英语中也有很多形近词。它们拼写相似，意义相近或相关，但用法却不同，我们要学会根据不同的语言环境，选择使用恰当的词汇。

请你根据图片选词完成句子。(可重复使用)

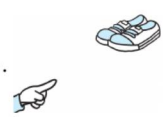
this that those these is are

1. 

How much is _____ postcard?

2. 

How much _____ _____ postcard?

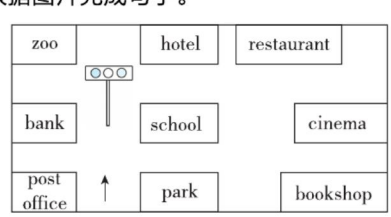
3. 

How much _____ _____ shoes?

4. 

How much _____ _____ stamps?

四、根据图片完成句子。



1. Go straight and _____ left at the traffic lights. You will see a _____ on your right.

2. Go straight. Turn right at the traffic lights. You will see a _____ near the hotel.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Go straight and turn _____ at the first crossing. The school is on your _____.

4. The bookshop is _____ from the zoo.

五、请为下列句子选择相应的答语。

(　　)1. Where is the park?

(　　)2. How much are the pictures?

(　　)3. Do you need water?

(　　)4. What is he doing?

(　　)5. Go straight. You'll see it.

A. Thank you!
B. Yes, but not now.
C. He's sleeping.
D. Turn right at the traffic lights.
E. They are ten yuan.

六、仿照例子，对画线部分提问。

例：It's fifteen yuan.
How much is it?

1. The post office is near the zoo.

_____

2. I'll take three pens.

_____

3. I need two stamps for my letter.

_____

4. My sister is writing an email.

_____

5. The pants are 120 yuan.

_____

七、阅读对话，完成任务。

Lily: Excuse me. Is there a Garden Hotel in this city?

Peter: Yes. There is one.

Lily: How can I get to the Garden Hotel, please?

Peter: Go straight on this street, and then turn left at the third crossing(十字路口). The bus stop is on your right, and you can take the No. 10 bus to the Garden Hotel directly.

Lily: Wait... wait for a moment... Is the bus stop at the first crossing?

Peter: No, it's at the third crossing.

Lily: The No. 10 bus?

Peter: That's right.

Lily: OK. I'm clear. Thanks a lot.

Peter: You are welcome!

(一)根据对话选择正确的答案。

(　　)1. The best title is _____

A. The way to the Garden Hotel.
B. What is the Garden Hotel?
C. There is a Garden Hotel in the city.

(　　)2. Where does Lily want to go?

A. The post office.
B. The bus stop.
C. The Garden Hotel.

(　　)3. Where is the No. 10 bus stop?

A. Turn right at the traffic lights.
B. Turn left at the third crossing.
C. Turn left at the first crossing.

(二)按要求完成下列各题。

(　　)4. Thanks a lot.(选出同义句)

A. Thanks very much.
B. Think of it.
C. You are right.

(　　)5. I'm clear.(选出同义句)

A. I'm wrong.
B. I see.
C. I don't know.

6. How to get to the Garden Hotel?
(在文中找出同义句)

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 16 An Email Is Fast

☞(答案见 102 页)

一、根据图片提示写单词，补全句子。

1. A _____ is slow. 
2. An _____ is fast. 
3. There is a _____ in the room. 
4. Can I _____ your pen? 
5. I have a good _____. 

二、选词填空。

1. Emails don't need _____ (computers/stamps). 【常识法】
2. I will go back home _____ (tomorrow/yesterday).
3. May I _____ (seeing/see) your book?
4. It's a (good/kind) _____ idea to walk home.
5. There _____ (is/are) some stamps on the desk.

三、单项选择。

( )1. We write a letter on _____.
A. a computer B. paper
C. a postcard

( )2. It's four o'clock in the afternoon. I want to go _____ home.
A. to B. back C. in

( )3. —Let's go to the zoo. —_____
A. Excuse me. B. You're welcome.
C. Good idea!

( )4. You can _____ many things on Wangfujing Street.
A. send B. buy C. go

( )5. An email _____ need stamps.
A. / B. is not C. doesn't

四、判断图片和句子是(T)否(F)相符。

( )1. Let's send an email. 

( )2. There is a computer in the room. 

( )3. We buy some things in the shop. 

( )4. See you tomorrow! 

( )5. Good idea! 

五、将句子按正确的顺序排一排，并按照句子的顺序给图片排序。

( ) But Amy says, "A letter is slow. An email is fast."

( ) Mike wants to send a letter to his mother.

( ) "Can I use your computer?" Mike asks.

( ) So Mike will buy a stamp.

( ) At last, Mike sends an email to his mother.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A.  B.  C. 

D.  E. 

图片顺序：_____

六、王刚第一次给他的加拿大朋友 Mike 发电子邮件，请帮他把内容补充完整吧！

A. I miss you.
B. mike@163.com
C. wanggang@126.com
D. Dear Mike,
E. Love, Wang Gang

To:1. _____

From:2. _____

Subject:3. _____

4. _____

How are you? I'm fine. I'm in Baoding. Baoding is old and famous. It's near Beijing. Welcome to Baoding.

5. _____

七、阅读信件，完成任务。

Dear Linda,

Thanks for your letter. I'm glad to hear you can come on Sunday. When you drive to my house, it's easy to find the library. It's a little difficult after that. So here are some instructions(说明). Drive past the library. Don't turn left into Garden Road. Go straight. There's a football ground, and then turn left into People Street. Then go into River Street at the second traffic lights. You can find my house on your left, next to the school.

See you on Sunday!

Yours,

Mary

(一)根据信件判断下列句子是(T)否(F)正确。

(　　)1. Linda will take a train.

(　　)2. Drive past the library and then turn left into Garden Road.

(　　)3. Mary's house is next to a school.

(二)根据信件选择正确的选项。

(　　)1. Who's the letter from?

A. Mary.　　B. Linda.

C. A writer.

(　　)2. Which place is easy to find?

A. Mary's house.

B. The library.

C. The school.

(　　)3. Mary's house is on _____.

A. Garden Road

B. People Street

C. River Street

(　　)4. When will Linda visit Mary?

【细节理解法】

A. On Saturday.

B. On Sunday.

C. On Tuesday.

(　　)5. Why does Mary make the instructions?

A. Because it's easy to find the library.

B. Because it's difficult to find her house.

C. Because she isn't glad to hear Linda can come.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 17 Danny's Email ☞(答案见 103 页)

一、读一读，选出可以替换画线部分的一项。

( )1. You are very kind.
A. much B. so C. fine

( )2. Don't forget to write to her.
A. us B. his C. she

( )3. What a great trip!
A. miss B. remember
C. bad

( )4. I'm writing a letter.
A. wear B. use C. reading

( )5. I'm coming home to Canada in February.
A. today B. back C. China

二、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. Danny _____ (write) emails on Sundays.
2. In Beijing, it is _____ (snow) today.
3. I'm _____ (have) fun in Beijing.
4. Say hi to your friends for _____ (I).
5. I'll _____ (be) happy to see you again.

【规律记忆法】

三、单项选择。

( )1. I'm writing an email _____ Steven.
A. in B. to C. from

( )2. —_____ the weather in Beijing?
—It's rainy.
A. What's B. How's C. How

( )3. I get an email. It's _____ Anna.
A. from B. to C. of

( )4. If you are not at home, I'll _____ you.
A. missing B. misses C. miss

( )5. Please _____ to put the stamp on your postcard. 【导学号 8582825】
A. forget B. remember C. miss

四、读一读，根据图片提示补全句子，完成对话。

1. 

A: What is Peter doing?

B: He _____ an email.

2. 

A: How's the weather in Baoding?

B: It's _____.

3. 

A: _____ any _____ in the room?

B: Yes, there are.

4. 

A: _____ forget to _____ your name.

B: OK!

5. 

A: _____ she _____ ?

B: Yes, she is.

五、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

( )1. Who writes the letter to you?

( )2. Do you have a good trip?

( )3. What's the weather like in Beijing?

( )4. Are there many people in the park?

( )5. What time do you go home?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. Yes, I do. B. At about six o'clock.
C. Steven writes to me. D. Yes, there are.
E. It's warm and windy.

六、阅读下面的电子邮件，完成任务。

To: rose@ supermail. com

From: brian@ compmail. ca

Subject: A trip to Shanghai.

Dear Brian,

I'm in Harbin now. How's the weather in Canada? It's cold and snowy here. I'm having fun. The people here are very kind. I'm coming home to Canada on May 31. Tomorrow I will write an email to our parents on the computer. I miss them very much. But it's a great trip.

See you soon!

Your sister,

Rose

(一) 以上电子邮件有三处错误，请你在邮件中圈出并在横线上改正。 【常识法】

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

(二) 根据电子邮件选择正确选项。

( )1. This email is from _____.
A. Brian B. Rose

( )2. Rose is in _____ now.
A. Canada B. China

( )3. Rose will write _____ to her mother and father.
A. a letter B. an email

( )4. Rose is Brian's _____.
A. sister B. brother

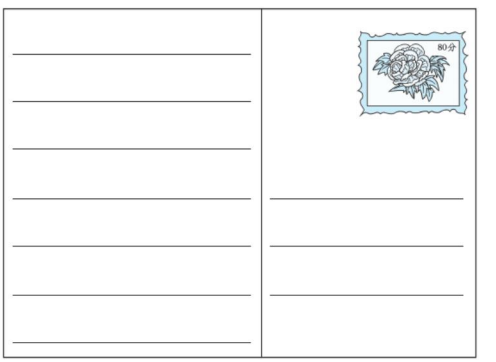
( )5. Rose _____ this trip.
A. likes B. doesn't like

七、写作技能提升练。

假如你是明明，母亲节要到了，请给妈妈写一张明信片。

1. 日期：5 月 10 日，星期日

2. 地址：北京市公园路 236 号



口语能力PK台

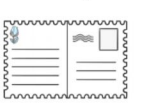
一、请用正确的语音语调大声朗读下面的句子。

口语测评

1. We write an email on a computer.
2. I want to send this postcard to my friend.
3. Go straight. Turn right at the traffic lights.
4. How much are those shoes?
5. A postcard is slow. An email is fast.

二、根据提示，和你的小伙伴一起讨论下面物品的价格吧！

提示：—How much…?
—They're/It's…

1.  1元

2.  6000元

3.  50元

4.  40元

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 18 Little Zeke Sends an Email ☞(答案见103页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据 Little Zeke Sends an Email 的故事完成下列任务。(教材第48~49页)

(一)根据故事内容选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. Li Ming, Danny and Jenny _____.

A. are sending an email

B. are writing a letter

C. send postcards

(　　)2. Who does Jenny want to send an email to?

A. Steven.　　B. Her mum and dad.

C. Emma.

(　　)3. Do they have lunch?

A. Yes, they do.

B. No, they don't.

C. We don't know.

(　　)4. Who sends an email to Jenny?

A. Emma.　　B. Her brother.

C. Little Zeke.

(二)根据故事内容排序。

(　　) The email isn't from Emma.

(　　) Jenny wants to send an email to Emma. Emma is in Ottawa.

(　　) Who is Little Zeke?

(　　) Look! It's an email for Jenny.

(　　) Nobody knows him.

(　　) Jenny also wants to send an email to her brother.

(　　) Little Zeke writes the email to Jenny.

(三)认真阅读故事,回答下列问题。

1. Where does Emma live?

_____

2. Why does Jenny send an email to Emma?

_____

3. What is Emma doing in the story?

_____

4. How does Little Zeke feel?

_____

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文,判断句子是(T)否(F)正确。

Mrs Hunt is sixty years old. She lives in a farmhouse in the country with her dog Bill. Her son Sam is twenty-one years old. At first, Sam works in a shop in the country and lives with his mother. But now he finds a new job in a town and lives there. It's quite a long way from his mother's house. His mother isn't happy about this. Sam says, "There aren't any good jobs for me in the country, Mother. I can get a lot of money in the town and give you some every week." One day Mrs Hunt goes to see her son, and she goes there by train. Sam meets her at the train station. She asks her son, "Why don't you phone me?" "But, Mother, you don't have a phone," Sam says. "No, I don't," she answers. "But you have one!"

(　　)1. Mrs Hunt has two sons.

(　　)2. Bill is twenty-one years old.

(　　)3. Now the son works in a town and lives far from his mother's house.

(　　)4. His mother doesn't like his job.

(　　)5. Sam has a phone, but his mother doesn't.

三、阅读短文,选择正确答案。

(一)

One day after school the teacher says to his students, "Tomorrow morning, if any of you can answer my first question. I'll permit(许可) him or her to go home earlier(更早)." The next day,

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

when the teacher comes into the classroom, he finds the blackboard is daubed(涂抹). He is angry and asks, "Who does it? Please stand up!" "It's me," says Bob. "Now, I can go home. Goodbye, sir!"

( )1. What is Bob?

A. He is a teacher.

B. He is a student .

C. He is a worker.

( )2. Why is the teacher angry?

A. The blackboard is daubed.

B. The students come early.

C. The boy can answer the first question.

( )3. "any of you" 的中文意思是_____。

A. 你们

B. 你们中的任何一个人

C. 你们所有人

( )4. Why does Bob daub the blackboard?

A. He likes to draw.

B. He is a bad boy.

C. He wants to go home earlier.

( )5. The student who can answer _____ can go home earlier.

A. the first question

B. all the questions

C. the last question

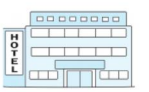
(二)_____

Mike is travelling around the country by car. One evening he is driving along a road and looking for a small hotel. Then he sees an old man at the side of the road. He stops his car and says to the old man, "I want to go to the Sun Hotel. Do you know it?" "Yes," the old man says. "I'll show you the way." He gets into Mike's car, and they drive off. They drive for about 1500 metres(米). When they come to a small house, the old man says, "Stop here." Mike stops and looks at the house. "But this isn't a hotel," he says. The old man answers, "This is my house. And now, I'll show you the way to the Sun Hotel. Turn around and go back 900 metres. Then you'll see the hotel on the left."

( )1. What is Mike doing?

A.  B. 

( )2. What is Mike looking for?

A. 

B. 

( )3. Who gets into Mike's car?

A.  B. 

( )4. Where do they arrive?

A.  B. 

( )5. What is the best title for it?

A. A good hotel.

B. Going home.

C. Asking the way.

( )6. Mike stops his car because _____.

A. he sees a friend

B. he wants to pick up the old man

C. he wants to ask the way

( )7. Mike should go back _____, and then he can find the Sun Hotel.

A. 600 metres

B. 900 metres

C. 1500 metres

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Again, Please! ☞(答案见104页)

听力专练

听力专练

一、听录音，给图片排序。






(　　)　(　　)　(　　)




(　　)　(　　)

二、听录音，判断下列句子与听到的内容是否相符，相符写 T，不相符写 F。

(　　)1. I'm writing a letter on paper.

(　　)2. We are having fun in Beijing.

(　　)3. Please write on the left.

(　　)4. How much is the postcard?

(　　)5. Don't forget to write to us.

三、听录音，选择正确的答语。

(　　)1. A. It's two yuan.

B. They are two yuan.

(　　)2. A. On the right.

B. On the left.

(　　)3. A. I'm writing a letter.

B. I send a letter to my mum.

(　　)4. A. Go straight and you can find it on the right.

B. There are many books in the bookshop.

(　　)5. A. I'll go back home.

B. I'm in Beijing.

四、听录音，填空完成句子。

1. How _____ are the postcards?

2. Danny puts the address on the _____.

3. You are _____.

4. My teacher is very _____.

5. A letter is _____.

读写专练

五、读一读，猜一猜，写一写。

1. It's a card. It has a picture on it.

It's a _____.

2. It's slow. You write it on paper.

It is a _____.

3. It's fast. You write and send it on a computer.

It's an _____.

4. They have three colours: red, yellow and green. They are on the street.

They are _____.

5. You can buy it at the post office. An email doesn't need it.

It's a _____.

六、读一读，选择正确的词补全短文。

kind　wrong　send　forgets to　writes　left
turn right　post office　buy　postcards

Danny writes nine 1. _____ to his mum. Danny is 2. _____. So he wants to 3. _____ some new postcards. Danny doesn't know where

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

the 4. _____ is. Jenny tells him, "Go straight, and 5. _____ at the traffic lights. It's on the 6. _____." Danny buys a postcard. And he 7. _____ the postcard. But Danny 8. _____ buy stamps. So he can't 9. _____ the postcard. Danny is sad. A man gives a stamp to Danny. He is very happy. He says, "You are so 10. _____!"

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

One day Einstein(爱因斯坦) was walking in the street in New York. His friend met him and said to him, "Einstein, you should buy a new coat. Look, how old your coat is!" But Einstein answered, "It doesn't matter. Nobody knows me here."

After a few years Einstein became a famous scientist (科学家). But he still wore the old coat. His friend met him again and asked him to buy a new coat again. But Einstein said, "I needn't buy a new one. Everyone knows me here."

(一)根据短文内容，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. Einstein had a lot of coats.

(　　)2. Einstein's coat was very old.

(　　)3. Einstein was a famous writer.

(　　)4. Einstein threw the old coat away.

(　　)5. The story happened in the USA.

(二)根据短文内容选择正确答案。

(　　)1. Einstein's coat was very old. His friend _____.

A. gave him a new one

B. asked him to buy a new one

C. helped him to buy a new one

(　　)2. Einstein didn't want to buy a new coat because _____.

A. he didn't mind

B. he liked the old one

C. he had no money

(　　)3. A few years later Einstein _____.

A. still wore the old coat

B. became a famous scientist

C. Both A and B.

(　　)4. The title of this story is _____.

A. Einstein

B. Einstein and his coat

C. Einstein and his friend

八、书面表达。

读一读 Mike 的电子邮件，请你帮 Anna 回一封电子邮件吧。

To: Anna@ compmail. ca
From: Mike@ supermail. com
Subject: Know about each other.
Dear Anna,
How are you? It's cold and snowy in Canada now. I make a snowman and I often throw snowballs with my friends. How is the weather in Shanghai? Do you have fun there?
Please write to me soon.
Your friend,
Mike

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Did You Have a Nice Trip?

Lesson 19 Li Ming Comes Home ☞(答案见104页)

一、核心素养练

学完本课,同学们对英语中动词的过去式有了初步的了解。有很多动词过去式的变化是有规律可循的。掌握这些规律,可以事半功倍。

请你根据动词过去式的规律,将下列动词的过去式分类。

work shop miss live look
like walk stop want

1. played 2. loved 3. planned

二、选择合适的单词,补全句子。(可重复使用)

often yesterday

1. Jenny _____ helps her parents. But she helped an old man last night.
2. _____ we watched TV. But we _____ see a film.
3. Tom _____ plays football after school. But he played basketball this morning.
4. _____ I shopped on Wangfujing Street. But I _____ shop at Xidan.

三、单项选择。

( )1. Lucy _____ TV last night.
A. watch B. watched
C. watching

( )2. —_____ you have a nice trip?
—Yes,I did.
A. Do B. Does C. Did

( )3. What did you do _____ home?
A. in B. at C. to

( )4. This gift is _____ you.
A. for B. and C. at

( )5. I wanted _____ the clothes.
A. to wash B. wash
C. washed

四、观察图表,完成任务。

(一)根据图片,完成表格。

人物	时间	活动	
Dad	7:00		have breakfast
Mum	9:00		1. _____
Mike	10:00		2. _____

(二)根据表格,完成句子。

1. —What did Mike's father do at 7:00?
—He _____ breakfast at 7:00.
2. —What did Mike's mother do at 9:00?
—_____
3. —_____
—_____

五、根据实际情况回答问题。

1. What did you do yesterday?
_____
2. What do you often do on Sundays?
_____
3. Did you help your friends?
_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. What did your father do last night?

_____

5. Where did you go last Monday?

_____

六、选择合适的句子，补全对话。

Mum: Hello, Susan! You're back. 1. _____

Susan: I missed you, too.

Mum: 2. _____

Susan: Yes! I had a great trip.

Mum: 3. _____

Susan: I went shopping with my friends. Look! 4. _____

Mum: Oh, it's beautiful. 5. _____

Susan: You're welcome.

A. What did you do?
B. I missed you.
C. Thank you.
D. Did you have a nice trip?
E. This dress is for you.

七、阅读理解。

(一)阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

It was a fine day last Sunday. Linda and Tom walked to the zoo. They saw many animals. They had a fun day. Tom wanted to buy some food for the animals. But he didn't do this. Because it was wrong!

(　　)1. How was the weather last Sunday?
A. It was rainy.　　B. It was windy.
C. It was sunny.

(　　)2. Where did they go?
A. They walked to the park.
B. They walked to the zoo.
C. They went to the shop.

(　　)3. What did they see?
A. Many animals.　　B. Some food.
C. Some people.

(　　)4. What did Tom want to do?
A. He wanted to buy some food for the animals.
B. He wanted to eat some food.
C. He wanted to buy some animals.

(　　)5. Did Tom buy any food?
A. Yes, he did.　　B. No, he didn't.
C. We don't know.

(二)阅读短文，完成任务。

Last summer, I had a great trip. I went across the U. S. with my family by car. We drove eight hours a day. Sometimes(有时候) we stayed in big hotels. The food was very delicious(美味的). I was happy there. Sometimes we stayed in small houses in the mountains. I really loved them. The houses were clean and quiet. We always got up early because we wanted to go swimming. There were beautiful lakes near the houses. We also went fishing and cooked food outside.

A. 根据短文内容，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. I will have a trip in summer.

(　　)2. We took a plane to the U. S.

(　　)3. We always stayed in a big hotel.

(　　)4. We all wanted to swim.

(　　)5. There were mountains and lakes near the small houses.　【联系上下文法】

B. 根据短文内容，选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. They went on a trip to _____ last summer.　【同义词替换法】
A. China　B. America　C. Canada

(　　)2. They drove _____ hours a day.
A. five　B. eight　C. seven

(　　)3. The food in big hotels was _____.
A. cheap　B. bad　C. delicious

(　　)4. Did they go fishing or cook food outside?
A. Yes, they did.　B. No, they didn't.
C. We don't know.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 20 Jenny Goes Home ☞(答案见 104 页)

一、有些动词的过去式是特殊变化，请你试着用下列动词的过去式完成句子。（每词限用一次）

have go see eat do

1. I _____ to the post office yesterday.
2. Mary _____ Tony last night.
3. They _____ hamburgers last week.
4. She _____ her homework yesterday evening.
5. We _____ breakfast yesterday morning.

二、单项选择。

( )1. The _____ day, we went to the Great Wall.
A. too B. second C. two

( )2. It was Saturday. Danny _____ lunch at 12:00. 【导学号 8582825】
A. has B. have C. had

( )3. Every day I _____ the birds in the tree. But today I didn't _____ them.
A. see; see B. saw; see
C. to see; saw

( )4. —_____ did you eat last night?
—I ate some oranges.
A. What B. Where C. When

( )5. —Did you buy the scarf for your mother?
—_____
A. No, I'm not. B. Yes, I do.
C. Yes, I did.

三、判断下列句子与图片是（T）否（F）相符。

( )1. I wanted to buy a postcard.



( )2. She went to the clothes shop yesterday!



( )3. Lucy went to bed at 9:00 last night.



( ) 4. Wang Hong watched TV yesterday evening.



( )5. Nancy saw a toy in a toy shop.



四、请找出下列句子中的一处错误并改正。

( )1. I see many peoples on the square.
A B C

_____

( )2. Did you watched TV yesterday?
A B C

_____

( )3. I ate a banana tomorrow.
A B C

_____

( )4. Li Ming wanted to buy book.
A B C

_____

五、看图，仿照例子完成句子。

例：

I often do my homework.
I did some sports yesterday.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. 

I eat an apple every day.

I _____ a hot dog yesterday.

2. 

I often _____ many people in the park.

Last night, _____ a dog.

3. 

I _____ to school on Monday.

Last Sunday, _____.

4. 

I _____ football every day.

Yesterday, _____.

六、根据上下文填单词，补全对话。

Lucy: Hi, Mum. Did you __1__ me?

Mum: Yes. I missed you! Did you have fun in Beijing?

Lucy: Yes. I __2__ fun!

Mum: Did you __3__ shopping?

Lucy: Yes! Here is a gift __4__ you.

Mum: Thank you! What else did you do?

Lucy: I also __5__ to some great places.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

One day, a monkey walked to a lake. Suddenly, he saw a tiger under a tree. The tiger saw him, too. The tiger ran (run 的过去式) very fast after the monkey. Because he wanted to eat the monkey. The monkey was very afraid. And he fell (fall 的过去式) into the lake. The monkey couldn't swim and he shouted, "Help! Help!" A rabbit came and he jumped into the lake. The rabbit swam (swim 的过去式) to the monkey but he could not help him. Both of them shouted for help. Then a giraffe came along. He was very tall. He helped the rabbit and the monkey.

(一) 根据短文内容，选择恰当的图片。

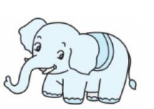
(　　) 1. Who walked to the lake?

A. 　B. 

(　　) 2. Who jumped into the lake, but he couldn't help the monkey?

A. 　B. 

(　　) 3. Who helped the monkey at last?

A. 　B. 

(二) 根据短文内容，回答问题。

1. Where did the monkey see the tiger?

_____

2. Why did the tiger run after the monkey?

_____

3. Could the monkey swim?

_____

4. Why did the monkey fall into the lake?

_____

5. Could the rabbit help the monkey?

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 21 Look at the Photos! ☞(答案见105页)

一、核心素养练

将单词按照词性,类别等进行分类可以帮助我们系统的学习单词;对单词在情景中的运用也可以达到举一反三的效果。

请你读下面的句子,选出画线词的同类词。

( )1. The children played games. They were happy.
A. eat B. sad C. photo

( )2. Danny was seven years old last year.
A. were B. do C. are

( )3. I hurt my leg last week.
A. month B. mouth C. yesterday

( )4. Mike went to Tian'anmen Square by bike.
A. hurts B. play C. had

( )5. Tim was on the plane to Canada.
A. train B. China C. Beijing

二、用be动词的适当形式填空。

1. I _____ sad yesterday. But I _____ happy now.
2. My grandfather _____ in Xi'an last summer. He _____ in Beijing this year.
3. Mary _____ short in 2000. Mary _____ tall now.
4. The rabbits _____ small one year ago. They _____ big now.
5. You _____ a student now. You'll _____ a teacher after five years.

三、火眼金睛。选出正确的一项,写在横线上。

1. Here are some _____(photo photos).
2. In this picture, we _____(was were) in the park.
3. —_____(Do Did) you miss me?
—Yes, I did.
4. Let's listen to _____(Danny Danny's) story.
5. He _____(hurts hurt) his arm yesterday.

四、单项选择。

( )1. I _____ many people on the Great Wall last week.
A. sees B. see C. saw

( )2. She is very happy _____.
A. last week B. yesterday C. today

( )3. Li Ming often _____ to school.
A. walk B. walks C. walking

( )4. —_____
—I was ill last night.
A. What is it? B. What happened?
C. What do you do?

( )5. Look _____ the computer. It's new.
A. at B. out C. with

五、读一读,为以下图片选出正确的描述。

1.  ( )
2.  ( )
3.  ( )
4.  ( )

A. Xiao Ming was short and fat.
B. Xiao Ming is tall and thin now.
C. He hurt his leg. He can't move now.
D. He played with his dog yesterday.

六、按要求改写句子。

1. We played with the baby.(改为一般疑问句)
【规律记忆法】
_____

2. The trees were small last year.
(用"now"改为一般现在时)
The trees _____ _____ _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. Li Ming is short this year.
（用“in 2008”改为一般过去时）

_____

4. We were very happy yesterday.（改为否定句）

_____

5. Did you go to the library last week?
（作否定回答）

_____

七、读一读，选出正确的句子补全对话。

A. What are you doing now?
B. What did you do yesterday?
C. How are you?
D. What happened?
E. Did you have fun?

A: Hello. 1. _____
B: Hi! I'm fine. Thank you.
A: 2. _____
B: I went to a park.
A: 3. _____
B: No. I hurt my leg.
A: 4. _____
B: I wanted to fly a kite, but I fell down and hurt my leg.
A: I am sorry to hear that. 5. _____
B: I am staying in my bed.

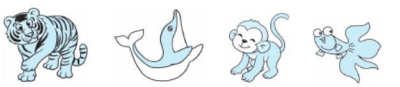
八、阅读短文，完成任务。

_____

Bill had a school trip with his classmates last Monday. They went to the aquarium（海洋馆）by bus. There were many sea animals in it. The children were excited. They took many pictures there. Then they watched a 4-D film in the aquarium. It was interesting. At noon, they had lunch in a small restaurant. Bill ate some delicious noodles. They went back to school in the afternoon. What a fun trip!

（一）根据短文内容，选择正确的图片。

(　　)1. What did they see?


①　②　③　④

A. ①③　　B. ②④

(　　)2. What did they do there?

A. 　　B. 

(　　)3. What did Bill eat?

A. 　　B. 

（二）根据短文内容，选择正确的一项。

(　　)4. The best title should be _____.
A. A school trip
B. Bill and his friend
C. The aquarium

(　　)5. How did they go to the aquarium?
A. They walked there.
B. They went there by bike.
C. They went there by bus.

(　　)6. Did they watch a 4-D film in it?
A. Yes, they did.
B. No, they didn't.
C. No. They watched a 3-D film.

(　　)7. What did they think of this trip?
A. It was a bad trip.
B. It was a fun trip.
C. It was a boring trip.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 22 Gifts for Everyone ☞(答案见 105 页)

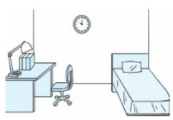
一、请根据图片，选择正确的短语，补全句子。

a gift　a beautiful kite　a small T-shirt
a white wall　a big cap

1. This is _____.



2. The clock is on _____.



3. I buy _____ for my brother.



4. He is flying _____.



5. I give _____ to my mother.



二、单项选择。

(　　)1. Tony _____ some gifts for his parents yesterday.
A. buys　B. buying　C. bought

(　　)2. This is a new cap. Please _____.
A. try it on　B. try them on
C. try on it

(　　)3. This T-shirt is _____ big for me.
A. for　B. too　C. to

(　　)4. Let's _____ the photo on the wall.
A. sit　B. have　C. put

(　　)5. —_____ you like this book?
—Yes, I do.
A. Are　B. Do　C. Did

三、核心素养练

同学们，我们已经学了一般现在时，现在进行时，一般将来时和一般过去时。你知道它们分别在什么情景中运用吗？

请你根据提示词，补全下面的句子。

1. I _____ a dress for my mother tomorrow. I _____ some flowers for my mother last year. (buy)

2. He _____ to school every day. He _____ to a park now. (walk)

3. Look! She _____ a book. She often _____ books in the afternoon. (read)

4. My parents and I _____ to Shanghai last summer holiday. We will _____ to visit Beijing this year. (go)

5. I _____ a film last Sunday. I _____ the moon now. (watch)

四、连词成句。

1. is　a　for　here　kite　Mr. Wood (.)
_____

2. put　the　wall　you　can　it　on (?)
_____

3. colour　favourite　yellow　is　my (.)
_____

4. are　too　shorts　long　me　for　the (.)
_____

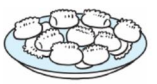
5. China　are　gifts　these　from (.)
_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、根据图片判断答语是否合理，合理在括号中写“Yes”，不合理写“No”，并在横线上改正。

(　　)1. **Danny**: What did you eat yesterday?

Li Ming: I eat dumplings.



_____

(　　)2. **Danny**: How was the weather last Sunday?

Jenny: It was snowy.



_____

(　　)3. **Jenny**: What did you do yesterday?

Kim: I bought a gift for my teacher.



_____

(　　)4. **Li Ming**: What are these?

Steven: These are my photos.



_____

(　　)5. **Rabbit**: Do you like this shirt?

Monkey: No. It's too small for me.



_____

六、阅读短文，完成任务。

_____

Alice was busy yesterday. In the morning, she went to the supermarket with her mother. They bought some vegetables and eggs. Then she helped her mother cook lunch. In the afternoon, Alice went to see her grandfather and grandmother. She took some fruit to them and helped them clean the house. In the evening, Alice did her homework. Then she went to bed early, so she couldn't be late the next day.

(一)根据短文内容，给图片排序。



(　　)　(　　)　(　　)



(　　)　(　　)

(二)根据短文内容，选择正确答案。

(　　)1. The best title should be _____.

A. A happy day　　B. A busy day

C. A sad day

(　　)2. What did Alice take to her grandparents?

A. Some vegetables.　B. Some flowers.

C. Some fruit.

(　　)3. When did Alice do her homework?

A. In the evening.

B. In the morning.

C. In the afternoon.

(　　)4. This story may happen _____.

A. on Monday

B. at the weekend

C. on Friday

(　　)5. What do you think of Alice?

A. She is a lazy(懒惰的)girl.

B. She is a good girl.

C. She works hard at school.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 23 An Email from Li Ming

☞(答案见105页)

一、单选选择。

( )1. Here _____ some postcards for you.
A. is B. am C. are

( )2. Please _____ back soon, Jenny.
A. write B. writing C. writes

( )3. The picture _____ the flowers is _____ me.
A. to; for B. of; for C. of; at

( )4. I miss _____ so much.
A. he B. him C. his

( )5. Did you _____ to Harbin yesterday?
A. go B. went C. goes

二、判断图片与句子是(T)否(F)相符。

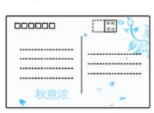
( )1. Danny was on the Great Wall.



( )2. We helped the old man.



( )3. This is a postcard.



( )4. This is a photo of Jenny flying a kite.



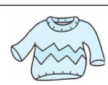
( )5. He hurt his leg yesterday.



三、请用所给词(组)的适当形式完成短文。

Here 1. _____ (be) a photo of Danny. Last week Danny 2. _____ (be) at Tian'anmen Square. He 3. _____ (want) fly a kite. He 4. _____ (hurt) his arm. Jenny 5. _____ (help) him. Then they 6. _____ (go back) home.

四、根据表格内容,仿照例子写句子。

	Today	Yesterday
I		
Tom		
Ben		

例:eat; hamburger; hot dog
I eat a hamburger today.
I ate a hot dog yesterday.

1. buy; sweater; T-shirt

_____

_____

2. watch; TV; film

_____

_____

五、给下列问句选择合适的答语。

( )1. What happened to Lily?
( )2. What did you do last Sunday?
( )3. Where were you yesterday?
( )4. Did Danny buy a postcard in Beijing?
( )5. How old were you last year?

A. Yes, he did.
B. She lost her school.
C. I was ten years old.
D. I was in a park with my friend.
E. I went swimming.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

六、按要求做题。

1. I had a great time in Beijing.（变否定句）

_____

2. I missed you.（变一般疑问句）

_____

3. I bought a gift for my mum.（对画线部分提问）

_____

4. Did you hurt your arm?（作否定回答）

_____

5. What did you do yesterday?

（根据实际情况回答问题）

_____

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

My name is Lucy. I am a driver. Yesterday, I ate dinner at 7:00 and then I went to work at 9:00 in the evening. I went home at 5:00 in the morning. I ate breakfast at 6:00. Then I went to bed.

I usually get up at 12:00 at noon. And I play sports at about 3:00 in the afternoon. I like to watch TV and climb the mountains. I often go hiking on the weekend.

（一）根据短文内容，用动词短语填写表格。

Yesterday	Usually
	get up at 12:00
went home	
	climb the mountains

（二）根据短文，选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. Lucy is a _____.

A. teacher　　B. driver

C. policewoman

(　　)2. Lucy went to work at _____ yesterday.

A. 9:00 in the morning

B. 9:00 in the evening

C. 7:00 in the evening

(　　)3. Lucy went home at _____.

A. 5:00 in the morning

B. 5:00 in the afternoon

C. 6:00 in the morning

(　　)4. Lucy worked _____ yesterday.

A. at night　　B. in the day

C. at noon

(　　)5. Lucy often _____ on the weekend.

A. watches TV　　B. goes hiking

C. climbs the mountains

八、写作技能提升练。

请选择一张你最喜欢的照片，用过去时描述一下照片。说一说照片在哪里拍的？照片上的人都是谁？他们在做什么？不少于5句话。

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

口语能力PK台

下面是Mike一家上周日的活动。请你根据提示，说一说他们都做了什么。要用上过去时态噢。

口语测评

例：

Mike cleaned his room last Sunday.

Mike

1. 

Mike's mother

2. 

Mike's father

3. 

Mike's brother

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 24 A Gift for Little Zeke ☞(答案见106页)

课内阅读对点练

一、根据课本中的故事完成下面的任务。

(教材第66~67页)

(一)判断下列句子与故事内容是否相符,相符写"T",不符写"F"。

(　　)1. Emma and Little Zeke are good friends.

(　　)2. Tom is Emma's classmate.

(　　)3. Mrs. Jones had some crayons for Emma.

(　　)4. Little Zeke writes a letter to Emma.

(　　)5. Mrs. Jones gives Little Zeke a bed.

(二)根据故事内容,选择正确的一项。

(　　)1. Where does Little Zeke live?

A. At Emma's home.

B. In Emma's classroom.

C. In Mrs. Jones' office.

(　　)2. Why does Little Zeke feel happy?

A. Because he sleeps in a sock.

B. Because Emma's class had a party.

C. Because Mrs. Jones gives him a gift.

(　　)3. What did Mrs. Jones give to Tess?

A. A book.　　B. A ball.

C. Some crayons.

(　　)4. What does Mrs. Jones give Little Zeke?

A. A little bed.　　B. A red ball.

C. A sock.

(　　)5. Does Little Zeke like Mrs. Jones' gift?

A. No, he doesn't.

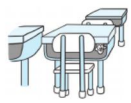
B. Yes, he does.

C. We don't know.

(三)根据图片,选出正确的单词完成句子。

bed　from　letter　wanted　puts
for　had　on　watched　lives

1. Little Zeke _____ in Emma's desk.



2. Tess _____ a hamburger and some milk _____ Emma's desk for Little Zeke.



3. Mrs. Jones _____ a book _____ Tom.



4. Little Zeke _____ Mrs. Jones. He _____ a gift, too.



5. Little Zeke writes a _____ to Mrs. Jones.



6. At last, Little Zeke has a _____ _____ Mrs. Jones.



拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文,选择正确答案。

Mr. and Mrs. Jones seldom(很少) go out in the evening. But last Sunday, Mrs. Jones said to her husband, "There's a good film on at the cinema tonight. Can we go and see it?" Mr. Jones was quite happy about it, so they went. And they enjoyed the film very much. They came out of the cinema at 10 o'clock. They got into their car and began to drive home. It was quite dark. Suddenly Mrs. Jones said, "Look, Bill! A woman is running along the road very fast, and a man is running after her. Can you see them?" Mr. Jones said, "Yes, I can." Then, he drove the car slowly to the woman and said to her, "Can we help you?"

"No, thank you," the woman said, but she

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

didn't stop running. Then she said, "My husband and I usually run home after films, and the last one washes the dishes at home!"

( )1. Mr. and Mrs. Jones went out to see a good film _____.
A. last Saturday B. last Sunday
C. this Sunday

( )2. The Jones went back home _____.
A. in their car B. on foot
C. by bike

( )3. When did the film end?
A. At 11 o'clock. B. At 10 o'clock.
C. After 10 o'clock.

( )4. The man and the woman ran home quickly, because _____.
A. they enjoyed washing the dishes
B. they didn't like the film
C. they didn't like doing the housework

( )5. Mr. Jones drove slowly to the woman, because _____.
A. he wanted to help the woman
B. he wanted to run with the woman
C. the woman is his friend

三、阅读短文，完成任务。

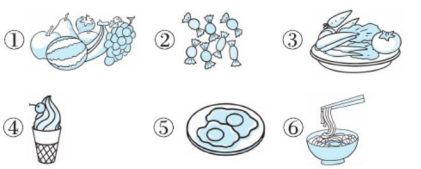
A healthy(健康的) body is very important(重要的) to us. We need to eat healthy food to have a healthy body. But what kinds of food are healthy? I can give you some ideas. Different food can give you different nutrition(营养). So you must eat a lot of different food. Rice, noodles and bread are very important. You should eat some but not too much. You must eat a lot of vegetables and fruit. Meat, chicken, fish and eggs are good for you. But don't eat too much. Every day you can have some drinks and a lot of water. But you can't eat a lot of candy or chocolate. Some sweet food, like ice cream, is bad for you, too.

You should go to bed early and get up early, too. Every day, you should do some exercise. You can run in the morning and take a walk after meals. And you can swim to keep healthy.

(一)根据短文内容，选择正确的答案。

( )1. The best title is _____.
A. How to be healthy
B. Different nutrition
C. Go to bed early

( )2. 属于"Healthy Food"的一项是_____。



A. ①③④⑥ B. ②③④⑤
C. ①③⑤⑥

( )3. You should drink more _____.

A.  B. 

C. 

( )4. Which is good for our health?

A.  B.  C. 

(二)根据短文内容，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

( )1. A healthy body is not important to people.

( )2. We should eat different food to keep healthy.

( )3. We must eat a lot of vegetables and fruit.

( )4. We can eat a lot of meat and chicken, because they are good for our health.

( )5. We can't eat too much salt, but we can eat much candy.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Again, Please! ☞(答案见106页)

听力专练

听力专练

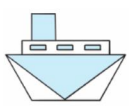
一、听录音，选择正确的图片。

( )1. A.  B. 

( )2. A.  B. 

( )3. A.  B. 

( )4. A.  B. 

( )5. A.  B. 

二、听录音，选择正确的答案。

( )1. I visited my grandmother _____.

A. last week B. last month

C. last year

( )2. I had some _____ soup and vegetables.

A. fish B. chicken C. fruit

( )3. I _____ on Sundays.

A. go to the cinema

B. watch the film

C. went to the cinema

( )4. Dave was _____ years old.

A. seven B. eleven

C. seventeen

( )5. I _____. It was interesting.

A. listened to a story

B. planted flowers

C. watched a film

三、听录音，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

( )1. Mary comes from the U. S.

( )2. Mary went to Beijing by plane.

( )3. Mary visited the Bird's Nest.

( )4. Mary took many beautiful pictures in Beijing.

( )5. Mary ate dumplings in Beijing.

四、听录音，填空。

Mike's family went to Beidaihe last year. Mike 1. _____ very happy there. They 2. _____ to the sea and 3. _____ in the sand. Mike's parents 4. _____ on the beach. Then they had dinner in a restaurant beside the sea. They came back to the hotel at about ten o'clock. They 5. _____ all very tired.

读写专练

五、选择正确的词填空，完成短文。

doing went were writing saw watching

Yesterday I __1__ to the zoo with my brother Jim. There __2__ many animals in the zoo. I __3__ monkeys and pandas. I like them very much.

Today is Sunday. We're at home. My father is reading a book, and my mother is __4__ TV now. My brother is __5__ an email to his friend Betty. What am I doing? Oh, I am __6__ my homework.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

六、下面是小朋友们昨天的活动统计。请根据图表信息补全句子。

	play football	watch a film	go shopping	fly a kite
Mike	√	√		√
Tom	√		√	√
Lucy	√		√	

What did they do yesterday?

1. _____ and _____ flew a kite.

2. Mike _____ and Lucy _____, too.

3. Lucy _____ fly a kite.

4. Tom didn't _____ yesterday.

5. Lucy _____ yesterday.

七、阅读信件，完成任务。

June 15, 2019

Dear Mum,

I'm writing from the U. S. How are you and my dad? I'm fine. I have some interesting photos for you. The first photo is my friend, Anna. She rode her bike in the park last Sunday. She was happy. The second photo is my aunt, Lily. She was in the yard yesterday. She planted flowers. She loves flowers very much. The third photo is me. I was at my friend's birthday party. We sang and danced. We were excited!

I miss you.

Love,

Xiao Fang

(一)根据信件,写出每张照片中人物的名字。





1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____

(二)根据信件内容,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

( )4. Xiao Fang is in China now.

( )5. Lily planted flowers on June 15.

( )6. Xiao Fang and her friend were happy at the party.

(三)仿照画线句子,写两句话。

7. _____

8. _____

八、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Today is a good day and a bad day. Here is the bad news. We went to the hotel by taxi. The driver told us many things about Kunming. I was excited about the trip. We went into the hotel but I didn't take my bag with me. Then I ran out, but the taxi was not there.

In the afternoon, my dad and I took a bus to the police station. A policeman showed us three bags. But they were not my bag. We waited in a chair.

Here is the good news. A man came into the police station. He brought my bag. I was excited to see the taxi driver again. He told me to enjoy my visit to Kunming. I can have a good trip now.

( )1. We went to the hotel by bus.

( )2. My dad told me many things about Kunming on the taxi.

( )3. The policeman showed us three bags.

( )4. The policeman helped us find our bags.

( )5. I was happy to see the taxi driver again.

九、上周你去北京旅行，天气怎样？你是怎样去的？看见了什么？给家人买了什么礼物？给我们介绍一下吧。不少于5句话。

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

期末复习训练 » Unit 1 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

1. 告诫别人不要做某事的句型：Please don't run.
2. 描述他人正在做某事的句型: He is drawing a picture.
3. 询问对方正在做什么的句型及其答语：—What are you doing? —I am reading a book.
4. 询问他人（单数）正在做什么的句型及其答语：—What is Jenny doing? —She is running.
5. 询问对方是否想要某物的句型及其答语：—Would you like some tea? —Yes, please. / No, thanks.

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见106页)

词汇过关

一、选出每组单词中和画线部分不同的一类。

The boy is hungry. He wants to eat some hot dogs.
① ② ③ ④

① A. baby B. girl C. people ( )

② A. tired B. with C. sad ( )

③ A. going B. sit C. stand ( )

④ A. bread B. rice C. tea ( )

二、重新排列下列字母，组成正确的单词，并写在横线上补全句子。(注意大小写)

A. ohw B. mnwoa C. ertaw D. ktla E. rsyor

1. —_____ is singing in the classroom?
—Miss Wang.
2. There is some _____ in the bottle(瓶子).
3. —Don't run in the library. —I'm _____.
4. I can't _____ with you now. I must (必须) go.
5. The _____ in red clothes is my aunt.

三、选择合适的词填空。

with to behind out at

1. I'm excited. I want _____ sing.
2. In the morning, he goes to school _____ his friend.
3. Look _____ the picture. What can you see?
4. Please don't look _____ of the window.
5. —Where is Jenny?
—She is _____ the tree.

句型语法过关

四、单项选择。

( )1. Some boys and girls _____ reading books.
A. am B. is C. are

( )2. The little baby _____ cry and sleep.
A. like B. likes to C. likes

( )3. My father likes to _____ the newspaper.
A. read B. see C. watch

( )4. I'd like _____ egg and _____ noodles, please.
A. an; some B. a; some C. an; a

( )5. —Would you like some tea, Jess?
—_____, Mum. I'd like some water.
A. Yes, please B. No, please C. No, thanks

( )6. I am talking _____ the old man behind _____.
A. to; you B. with; your C. in; you

( )7. They _____ the train station.
A. runs to B. arrive at C. play with

( )8. This is our classroom. Please _____ here.
A. play basketball
B. don't play basketball
C. can't play basketball

( )9. —What are you doing now?
—_____
A. Yes, I am doing my homework.
B. I do my homework after class.
C. I am doing my homework.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(　　)10. —What would you like to drink?

—_____

A. I'd like some juice.

B. No, thanks.

C. Okay. I like tea very much.

五、用所给词的正确形式填空。

1. My mother is _____ (wash) the clothes.
2. My father _____ (be not) watching TV.
3. May I _____ (play) cards with you?
4. Danny, _____ (sit) down, please.
5. I have some _____ (banana) and _____ (candy) for you.

六、读一读，根据图片提示，仿写句子。

例：

She is singing a song.

1. 
2. 
3. 

1. The boy _____.
2. I _____.
3. They _____.

综合运用过关

七、读一读，选择正确的句子，补全对话。

Mum: Tony! 1. _____

Tony: I'm in my bedroom.

Mum: 2. _____

Tony: I am drawing a picture on the English book.

Mum: Oh, Tony. 3. _____

Tony: Oh, sorry, Mum.

Mum: That's OK. It's time for lunch. 4. _____

Tony: I'd like some chicken.

Mum: 5. _____

Tony: Yes, please.

A. Don't draw on your books.
B. Where are you?
C. What would you like?
D. What are you doing, Tony?
E. Would you like some vegetables?

八、阅读短文，选择正确的一项。

It's March now. Spring comes. Everything is beautiful in the park. There is a lake in the park. Some fish are swimming in the lake. A small house is on the right of the lake. Some trees and flowers are on the hills. Many women are sitting in front of the house. What are they doing? They are talking quietly. Some boys are playing football and some girls are drawing pictures. Look! There is a little boy near the lake. He's feeding fish. You can also see a girl flying a kite. They are having a good time.

(　　)1. It's _____ now.

A. May　　B. April　　C. March

(　　)2. The house is _____.

A. big　　B. small　　C. white

(　　)3. The women are _____.

A. talking quietly　　B. talking loudly

C. laughing

(　　)4. Where is the little boy?

A. In the boat.

B. On the hill.

C. Near the lake.

(　　)5. Who are drawing pictures?

A. Some women.

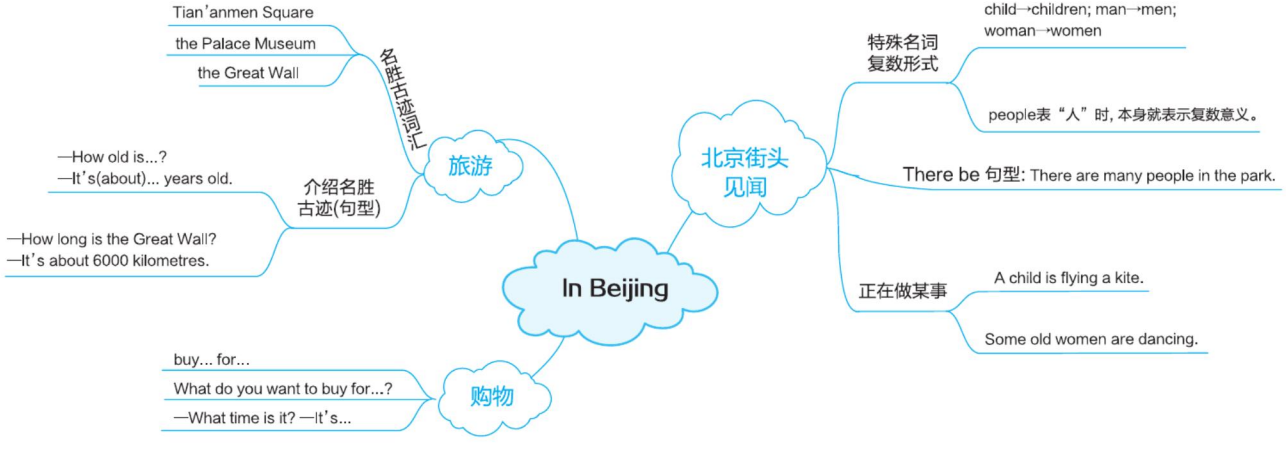
B. Some boys.

C. Some girls.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

1. 特殊名词的复数形式：woman→women　man→men　child→children
2. There be 句型：There are many people on the square.
3. 询问某建筑物有多久历史的句型：—How old is the Palace Museum?— It's about 600 years old.
4. 询问某建筑物有多长的句型：—How long is the Great Wall? —It's about 6000 kilometers.
5. 描述给某人买某物的句型：Jenny buys a scarf for her mother.
6. 询问时间点的句型：—What time is it? —It's 2:30.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见107页)

词汇过关

一、根据提示信息给单词分类。

A. take	B. afraid	C. women	D. busy
E. wait	F. children	G. babies	H. sad
I. feel	J. tired	K. draw	L. men

1.  动词

2.  形容词

3.  名词

二、选择合适的单词填空。

his on in too for

1. I want to buy a book _____ you.
2. On _____ way home, he hurts his leg.
3. There are _____ many people on the Great Wall.
4. Let's look _____ the window.
5. Some children are flying kites _____ the square.

句型语法过关

三、用所给词的正确形式填空。

1. These _____ (woman) are singing.
2. There _____ (be) an apple and some pears in the bag.
3. —How's the weather today?
   —It's _____ (sun).
4. Let's _____ (take) some pictures in the park.
5. My mother loves _____ (shop) very much.

四、读一读，选择正确的答案。

( )1. Danny falls off the bike and _____ his arm.
A. hurting B. hurt C. hurts

( )2. The _____ are _____ together.
A. man; talk B. men; talking
C. men; talk

( )3. This math question is _____. Can you help me?
A. easy B. interesting
C. difficult

( )4. Li Ming _____ with his mother on Wangfujing Street.
A. goes shopping B. goes shop
C. go shopping

( )5. —How _____ pencils do you need?
—I need nine.
A. many B. much C. old

( )6. —How old is the museum?
—_____
A. It's two hundred year old.
B. It's two hundreds years old.
C. It's two hundred years old.

( )7. —How do we go to the train station?
—It's far from here. We need to _____.
A. by car B. take a bus
C. driving a car

( )8. —Where is Li Ming?
—He is _____ us at the restaurant.
A. waiting for B. stopping
C. running to

( )9. I'm sorry. I am _____ now. I can't help you clean the rooms.
A. happy B. busy C. high

( )10. —What time do you go to school?
—I go to school _____.
A. from Monday to Friday
B. at 7:00 in the morning
C. five days a week

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、看图，仿照例子补全句子。

例：（child；hot）

These children are running. They are hot.

1. （girl；happy）

2. （man；busy）

3. （baby；hungry）

1. These _____ are _____. They are _____.

2. These _____ are _____. They are _____.

3. _____

六、连词成句。

1. I ride may your bike (?)

_____

2. buys Li Ming tea his for father some (.)

_____

_____

3. is he afraid falling the water into of (.)

_____

_____

4. beside a bus stop there school the is (.)

_____

_____

5. can't with walk to that hotel you the (.)

_____

_____

综合运用过关

七、给下列问句选出合适的答语。

(　　)1. Does Danny hurt his tail?

(　　)2. How old is the Great Wall?

(　　)3. How does the girl feel?

(　　)4. Is Danny busy?

(　　)5. How long is the road?

A. It's about 500 metres long.
B. Yes, he is.
C. Yes, he does.
D. It's about 2000 years old.
E. She feels tired.

八、阅读短文，回答问题。

Ted lives on a farm in the country. Through the window of his room, he can see many trees, mountains and a beautiful lake. He can see white clouds floating(飘浮) in the blue sky. Ted walks to his school. On the way to his school, he sees two dogs playing together. He can also see a farmer and his cow walking on the road. He sees a mother bird feeding its babies.

There is a river on his way to school. He walks on the bridge and sees the fish swimming in the water. The way to school is interesting. The sky is blue. The air is fresh. Ted is happy to walk to school.

1. Where does Ted live?

_____

2. How does Ted go to school?

_____

3. What are the two dogs doing?

_____

4. Is there a river on his way to school?

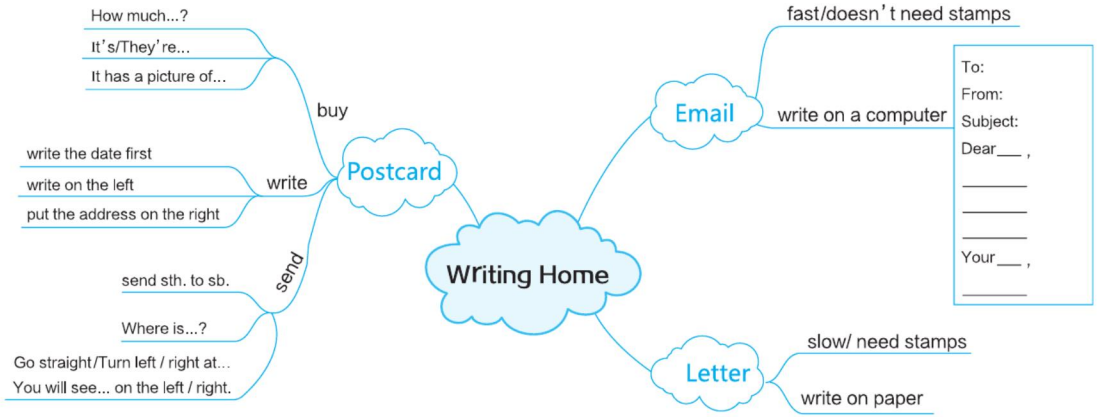
_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

1. 表达某物上有某个图片的句型：This postcard has a picture of the Palace Museum.
2. 礼貌地提出请求：—May I see that postcard, please? —Sure.
3. 询问价格：—How much is the postcard/are the postcards? —It's/ They're ten yuan.
4. 问路的句型：Excuse me, where is the post office?
5. 征求对方意见：—Can I use your computer? —Sure.
6. 询问天气：(1) —How's the weather in Beijing? —It's sunny.
   (2) —Is it rainy? —Yes, it is.
7. 描述没有某物：There is no snow.
8. 明信片和邮件的格式。

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见107页)

词汇过关

一、根据句意和图片提示写单词。

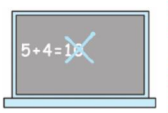
1. You write an email on a _____.



2. Turn _____ at the traffic lights. Then you will see a school.



3. Five and four is ten. That's _____.



4. I'm _____ a letter to my mum.



5. This is my _____ hand.



二、选出每组中不同类的单词。

( )1. A. boy B. girl C. men D. woman

( )2. A. post office B. postcard C. school D. hospital

( )3. A. send B. slow C. fast D. tired

( )4. A. dear B. great C. fine D. idea

( )5. A. stamp B. email C. computer D. forget

三、选择合适的介词填空。(每词限用一次)

at on to of from for

1. The postcard has a picture _____ the Great Wall.
2. We put the address _____ the right.
3. I need the stamps _____ two postcards _____ Canada.
4. The letter is _____ my mum.
5. Turn left _____ the traffic lights.

句型语法过关

四、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. These gifts are for _____(we).
2. Isn't everyone in Ottawa _____(sleep) now?
3. The weather is cold and _____(snow) in winter.
4. I want ten _____(stamp).
5. I love _____(that) postcards. They are beautiful.

五、单项选择。

( )1. —_____ Where is the library?
—Go straight. You'll see it on the right.
A. Excuse me. B. Okay. C. Fine.

( )2. —_____ are the postcards?
—Five yuan.
A. How many B. How much C. How

( )3. I _____ an email to my friend.
A. sends B. sending C. am sending

( )4. Can I _____ your pen to write a letter?
A. play B. send C. use

( )5. The girl _____ a stamp for her letter.
A. needs B. is need C. to need

( )6. May I write _____ an email?
A. my B. your C. you

( )7. _____ a computer in the classroom.
A. These is B. There is C. There are

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)8. Mr. Li wants _____ me _____ his trip.
A. tell; about　　B. to tell; about
C. tell; of

(　　)9. I'll _____ happy to see you again.
A. am　　B. are　　C. be

(　　)10. _____ he want to play football?
A. Is　　B. Do　　C. Does

六、按要求完成下列句子。

1. There is a picture on the wall. (改为否定句)

_____

2. You can use the computer. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

3. I need some stamps. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

4. a　you　on　write　letter　paper (.)
(连词成句)

_____

5. will　you　bookshop　the　left　on　see　the (.) (连词成句)

_____

_____

综合运用过关

七、选择恰当的句子完成对话。

B: 1. _____
G: Sorry. We don't have any stamps. You should go to the post office.
B: 2. _____
G: Go straight and turn left at the traffic lights. You will see the post office.
B: 3. _____
G: It's not far from here. You can walk there.
B: 4. _____
G: I don't know.
B: Thank you!
G: 5. _____

A. You are welcome.
B. Do you have stamps?
C. How much is the stamp?
D. How can I go there?
E. Where is the post office?

八、阅读下面的邮件，完成任务。

To: 1. _____
From: 2. _____
Subject: 3. _____
4. _____

I'm in Beijing. Beijing is very big. And there are many famous places, such as Tian'anmen Square, the Palace Museum, Beihai Park, the Bird's Nest, the Water Cube and so on.

I like the Palace Museum best. There are many palaces and rooms in it. They are very old. Tomorrow I will visit the Bird's Nest and the Water Cube. The Bird's Nest is near the Water Cube. I want to watch a match at the Bird's Nest. And then I want to swim at the Water Cube. I hope to see you in Beijing.

5. _____

(一) 请将下列各项填到正确的位置。(填序号)

A. tom@163.com　　B. alice@126.com
C. Dear Alice,　　D. How are you?
E. Your friend, Tom

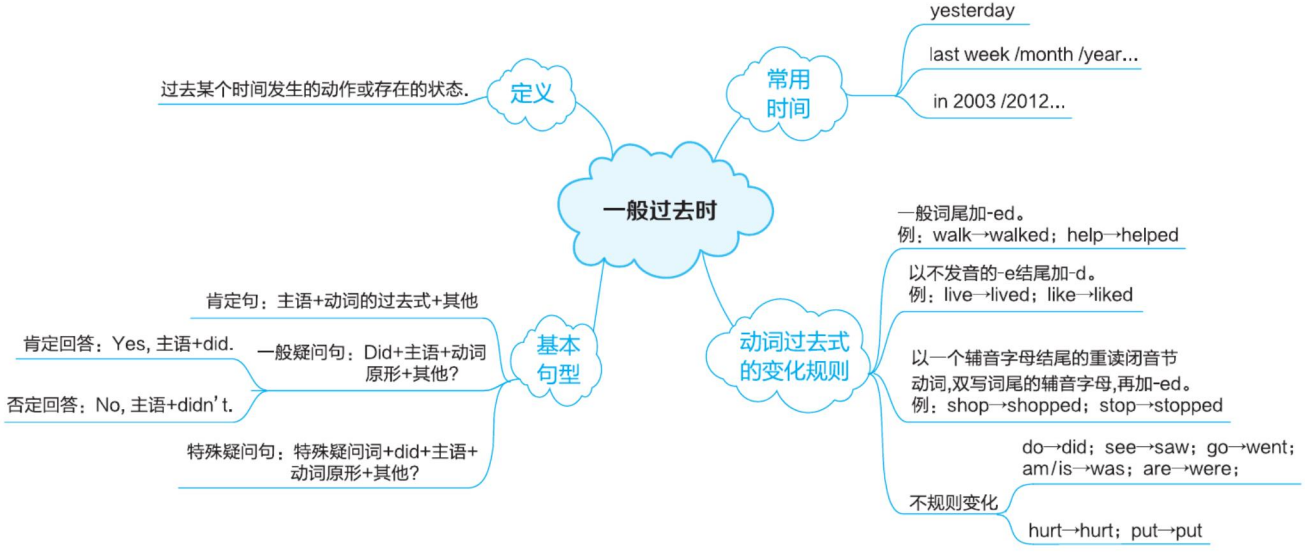
(二) 根据邮件判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

(　　)1. Alice is in Beijing.
(　　)2. Beihai Park and the Bird's Nest are in Beijing.
(　　)3. Tom's favourite place is the Water Cube.
(　　)4. Tom will go to the Bird's Nest and the Palace Museum tomorrow.
(　　)5. Tom wants Alice to go to Beijing.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 复习训练

知识导图



本单元重难、易错点提醒

1. 询问对方过去某个时间做过什么：—What did you do yesterday? —We walked to school.
2. 询问某人是否做过某事：—Did you miss me? —Yes, I did.
3. 描述某人过去的状态：Danny was at the Palace Museum.
4. 询问过去发生了什么：—What happened? —I hurt my finger.
5. 向对方送礼物：Here is a gift for you.
6. 表达过去自己和某人玩得很开心：I had a great time with you in Beijing.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

重难点过关检测 ☞(答案见107页)

词汇过关

一、请把下列单词的过去式填在适当的位置。

have go see eat are call
miss walk like live shop

1.	played	2.	did
3.	moved	4.	stopped

二、选出每组中不同类的单词。

( )1. A. watch B. jump C. wanted D. walk

( )2. A. photo B. painting C. picture D. sing

( )3. A. three B. second C. fourth D. first

( )4. A. shirt B. skirt C. clothes D. sweater

( )5. A. yesterday B. today C. tomorrow D. Sunday

三、用所给的词填空。(每词限用一次)

walked was this shopped saw

1. I _____ the animals in the zoo yesterday.
2. We are 12 years old _____ year.
3. I _____ in Beijing last month.
4. He _____ happy yesterday.
5. My bike was lost. So I _____ home.

句型语法过关

四、用所给单词的正确形式填空。

1. She is _____(sing) a song.
2. What _____ (do) she do yesterday?
3. We _____(have) fun last week.
4. My parents often _____ (watch) TV in the evening.
5. He _____ (eat) some vegetables and rice for dinner yesterday afternoon.

五、单项选择。

( )1. He often _____ to school on foot.
A. go B. went C. goes

( )2. Did they _____ a good trip?
A. have B. had B. has

( )3. I will be happy _____.
A. yesterday B. tomorrow C. today

( )4. _____ you do your homework last night?
A. Did B. Do C. Does

( )5. What did you want to _____ for your friend?
A. bought B. buy C. buys

( )6. —Did you go to Hainan last summer?
—_____
A. Yes, I do. B. No, I don't. C. Yes, I did.

( )7. Here _____some photos of our trip.
A. are B. were C. was

( )8. I'm very tired _____.
A. today B. tomorrow C. yesterday

( )9. I bought a book _____ my teacher.
A. in B. on C. for

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(　　)10. The shoes are nice. Please _____.

A. put it on　　B. try them on

C. try on them

六、看图，补全对话。

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 

1. —_____ did you go yesterday?

—I _____ to the bookshop.

2. —What _____ to the girl?

—She _____ her head.

3. —_____ did your mother buy this morning?

—She _____ some fruit.

4. —_____ did he has lunch yesterday?

—He _____ lunch at half past one.

七、用括号中所给的词（组）改写句子。

1. I'm doing my homework now. (last night)

_____

2. Mike often has lunch at school. (yesterday)

_____

3. Does Tom walk to school every day? (last week)

_____

4. How old are you? (last year)

_____

5. He read a book yesterday. (now)

_____

综合运用过关

八、选择正确的句子，补全对话。

Mary: Did you have a nice trip last summer?

Lucy: 1. _____

Mary: 2. _____

Lucy: We went to Sichuan. It was too hot.

Mary: 3. _____

Lucy: We took a plane.

Mary: Where will you go this summer?

Lucy: We will go to Beidaihe.

Mary: 4. _____What will you do there?

Lucy: 5. _____

A. Where did you go?

B. Oh, it's a good idea.

C. How did you go there?

D. Yes. The trip was great!

E. I will eat good seafood.

九、阅读短文，回答问题。

I'm Xiao Li. Last Friday was my birthday. But no one at school said "Happy birthday!" to me. I was very sad. My friend, Zhang Hong, asked me to go to her house after school. At 6 o'clock, I went to Zhang Hong's house. It was dark(黑暗) in the house and no one was there. Suddenly, all my friends came out of the kitchen and said, "Happy birthday!" I was excited to see all my friends there. We played games and ate the birthday cake together. We had a good time.

1. When was Xiao Li's birthday?

_____

2. How did Xiao Li feel at school?

_____

3. When did Xiao Li go to Zhang Hong's house?

_____

4. What did they do there?

_____

5. Did they have a good time there?

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	分
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一　听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（　　）1. A. woman　　B. man　　C. many

（　　）2. A. sees　　B. look　　C. take

（　　）3. A. play　　B. dance　　C. jump

（　　）4. A. sit down　　B. fly a kite　　C. stand up

（　　）5. A. looking out　　B. looking at　　C. pointing to

二　听录音，选择与所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（　　）1. A. 　B. 

（　　）2. A. 　B. 

（　　）3. A. 　B. 

（　　）4. A. 　B. 

（　　）5. A. 　B. 

三　听录音，选择正确的答案。（10 分）

听第一段短文，完成 1 至 3 小题。

（　　）1. Where is Li Ming?

A. He is on a bus.　　B. He is in Beijing.　　C. He is on the train.

（　　）2. What is the little boy doing?

A. He is reading a book.　　B. He is drawing a picture.　　C. He is playing cards.

（　　）3. How are the boys?

A. They are happy.　　B. They are hungry.　　C. We don't know.

听第二段短文，完成 4、5 小题。

（　　）4. Jenny, Danny and Li Ming are having _____ in KFC.

A. lunch　　B. breakfast　　C. dinner

（　　）5. Danny would like _____.

A. some juice　　B. some ice cream　　C. two hamburgers

四　听录音，完成句子或对话。（10 分）

1. Rabbits like to _____ and eat carrots.
2. _____ is sleeping?
3. —Tim, would you like some _____? —No, thanks.
4. —What is the baby doing? —He is _____.
5. —Where is Danny? —He is behind the _____.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五　根据图片写单词，补全句子。（10 分）

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

1. The girl is drawing a _____.　　2. I'd like some _____.
3. _____ walk on the grass.　　4. This _____ is my aunt.
5. The little baby is _____.

六　选择正确的选项。（10 分）

（　　）1. —Would you like _____ fruit? —Yes, I'd like _____ apple.

A. a; an　　B. some; some　　C. some; an

（　　）2. Look! The girl _____ her face.

A. washes　　B. is washing　　C. to wash

（　　）3. —Don't draw on the wall. —_____

A. Yes, please.　　B. No, thanks.　　C. I'm sorry.

（　　）4. He _____ eat some chicken.

A. want to　　B. wants　　C. wants to

（　　）5. Don't run in the classroom. Please _____.

A. walks　　B. walk　　C. to walk

（　　）6. Jenny is looking _____ the window _____ the train.

A. out of; on　　B. out; to　　C. out at; at

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( ) 7. —_____ is singing? —The young man behind _____.
A. Who; I B. What; my C. Who; me

( ) 8. They arrive _____ the train station _____ 7: 00 _____ Monday morning.
A. at; at; in B. at; in; on C. at; at ; on

( ) 9. —I'd like some candy. —_____
A. Okay. You're welcome. B. Okay. Here you are. C. Okay. There you are.

( ) 10. —_____ is Danny doing? —He is _____ a man under a tree.
A. What; talking to B. Who; talking to C. What; talking

七 给下列句子选择合适的答语。(10 分)

( ) 1. What are they doing?
( ) 2. What would you like to drink?
( ) 3. May I sit here?
( ) 4. Would you like some dumplings?
( ) 5. Is your mother watching TV?

A. Sure.
B. No. She is cooking.
C. They are playing football.
D. I'd like some tea.
E. No, thanks.

八 按要求完成句子。(10 分)

1. Wang Ming reads a book every evening. (把 every evening 改为 now)

_____

2. Would you like some tea? (作出否定回答)

_____

3. Danny is dancing and singing. (对画线部分提问)

_____

4. Some girls are playing on the playground. (改为否定句)

_____

5. Look out of the window. (改为否定句)

_____

九 选择合适的句子，补全对话。(10 分)

May: Joy, what time is it now?
Joy: It's about 4:30.
May: 1. _____
Joy: Yes. I am thirsty now.
May: 2. _____
Joy: I'd like a bottle of orange juice, please.
May: 3. _____
Joy: No, thank you. I'm not hungry. 4. _____
May: I'm hungry now. I'd like a hamburger.
May: A bottle of orange juice, a bottle of apple juice and a hamburger, please.
Waiter: OK.
May: 5. _____
Waiter: Fifteen yuan, please.

A. What about you?
B. Would you like something to drink?
C. What would you like?
D. Would you like something to eat?
E. How much are they?

十 阅读短文，判断句子与短文内容是 (T) 否 (F) 相符。(10 分)

Tom goes to Beijing with his mother and father. They go to Beijing by train. They get up at 6:00 in the morning. They arrive at the train station at 6:30. There are many people on the train. Look! Two women are talking. A man is playing cards with his friends. A girl beside Tom's mother is listening to music. A little boy is very excited. He is jumping up and down on the train. His mother says, "Don't jump. Please sit down, Mike." "You are so cute. You can play with me," Tom says to the boy.

( ) 1. Tom arrives at the train station at 6:30 with his parents.
( ) 2. There are two women talking on the train.
( ) 3. Tom's father is playing cards with his friends.
( ) 4. Tom is jumping up and down on the train.
( ) 5. Tom likes the little boy.

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

春暖花开，公园里有很多人。请你以"In the park"为题，发挥自己的想象力，介绍一下公园里面发生的事情。

要求：1. 请用现在进行时态进行描述；2. 不少于 5 句话。

In the park

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

密 封 线

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）								总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	分
得　分													

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（　）1. A. arrive in　　B. arrive at　　C. arrive for

（　）2. A. pupil　　B. pen　　C. people

（　）3. A. fly　　B. flying　　C. flies

（　）4. A. the Great Wall　　B. Tian'anmen Square　　C. the Palace Museum

（　）5. A. two thirty　　B. two thirteen　　C. two past three

二 听录音，判断图片与所听内容是否相符，相符写 T，不相符写 F。（5 分）

1. 　（　）

2. 　（　）

3. 　（　）

4. 　（　）

5. 　（　）

三 听录音，选择正确的答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. It is yellow.　　B. It is red.　　C. It is green.

（　）2. A. The Great Wall.　　B. Wangfujing Street.　　C. The Palace Museum.

（　）3. A. It's 9:00 in the morning.　　B. It's 7:00 in the evening.　　C. It's 4:00 in the afternoon.

（　）4. A. Yes, I know.　　B. Yes, I can.　　C. Great.

（　）5. A. He likes to sing.　　B. He is singing.　　C. They are singing.

四 听录音，填空。（10 分）

Place: in the 1. _____

Who	Doing
2. _____ boys	playing football
some old women	3. _____
4. _____ girl	5. _____ a picture

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 根据首字母和图片提示写单词，补全句子。（5 分）

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

1. Two m_____ are talking in the room.
2. Let's wait at the bus s_____.
3. She is a_____ of snakes.
4. She is crying. She is very s_____.
5. —How do you feel? —I feel t_____.

六 用所给词的正确形式填空。（5 分）

1. A boy is running on the playground. Some _____ (child) are playing basketball.
2. Don't _____ (worry). I can help you.
3. _____ (am) careful! Don't fall.
4. Some people are taking _____ (picture).
5. "I hurt my arm," _____ (say) Danny.

七 读一读，选择正确的一项。（10 分）

（　）1. There are _____ cars and buses on the street.
A. too many　　B. too much　　C. many too

（　）2. They are _____ the Palace Museum.
A. visit　　B. visiting　　C. visitting

（　）3. I _____ a book _____ my sister.
A. buy; for　　B. buys; for　　C. buy; to

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

( ) 4. —How does the boy feel?
—He _____ thirsty and hungry.
A. feel B. feeling C. feels

( ) 5. Shanghai is far from here. We need _____ a train.
A. takes B. to take C. taking

( ) 6. I can't fly a kite very high. So it's _____ for me.
A. easy B. difficult C. afraid

( ) 7. We arrive _____Beijing _____ ten o'clock in the morning.
A. in; in B. at; at C. in; at

( ) 8. I can't walk home _____the big toy.
A. with B. to C. at

( ) 9. He's on _____way to the hotel.
A. he B. him C. his

( ) 10. It's time for class. Please _____.
A. stands up B. stand up C. standing up

八 读一读，选择合适的词填空，补全对话。(10分)

help easy difficult waiting for Can

Tina: Hello, Ben. What are you doing here?

Ben: Hello, Tina. I'm __1__ my friend, Peter. He can fly a kite very well. __2__ you fly a kite?

Tina: Yes, I can. That's __3__. Do you want to fly a kite?

Ben: Yes. But I think it's __4__.

Tina: Don't worry. I can __5__ you.

Ben: Thank you.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

九 找出合适的答语，并连线。(10分)

1. May I take your picture? A. No. I hurt my arm.
2. Are you okay? B. Yes, he is.
3. Don't draw or write on the wall. C. I'm walking to the hotel.
4. Is Danny busy? D. Sure.
5. What are you doing? E. OK. I'm sorry.

十 连词成句。(10分)

1. looks fifteen he in shops (.)
_____

2. kind she to is students her (.)
_____

3. colour is umbrella what your (?)
_____

4. see to what they do hotel the way on their (?)
_____

5. people taking on the some pictures are square (.)
_____

十一 阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10分)

Mike is an English boy. Now, he studies in Beijing. He has a good friend, Li Gang. They often play together. Today they want to climb the Fragrant Hills (香山). They buy some food and drink in a shop. And then they go to the hill by car. Mike climbs quickly. Li Gang climbs slowly. Mike is so happy. But he falls and hurts his knee. Luckily, Li Gang has some plasters (创可贴) in his bag. He puts one on Mike's knee. Mike is better now.

( ) 1. Mike is an English boy. He studies in China now.
( ) 2. Today Mike and his friend go to the Fragrant Hills by bus.
( ) 3. Mike and Li Gang climb very quickly.
( ) 4. Mike hurts his arm.
( ) 5. Li Gang helps Mike. Mike is better now.

十二 书面表达。(10分)

今天是儿童节，丽丽和弟弟在公园放风筝。请你根据图片，以丽丽的角度写一篇小短文，描述一下公园中的情景。不少于5句话。

参考词汇：Children's Day go to the park many people play happily fly a kite
be easy for us take pictures

_____
_____
_____
_____



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

期中检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	分
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听单词或短语的对应词或反义词。（5 分）

（　）1. A. sit　　B. sing　　C. dance

（　）2. A. woman　　B. girl　　C. man

（　）3. A. go　　B. up　　C. down

（　）4. A. worry　　B. tea　　C. hungry

（　）5. A. look at　　B. look in　　C. look for

二 听录音，选出与所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（　）1. A.　B.　（　）2. A.　B.

（　）3. A.　B.　（　）4. A.　B.

（　）5. A.　B.

三 听录音，选出正确的答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. He is reading a newspaper.　　B. He likes to read newspapers.
C. Yes, he is reading a book.

（　）2. A. Yes, I am.　　B. No, I can't.　　C. I am flying a kite.

（　）3. A. She is watering the flowers.　　B. I'm in the bedroom.
C. I am doing my homework.

（　）4. A. Yes, please.　　B. I'm thirsty, too.　　C. I like juice.

（　）5. A. Danny is sad.　　B. I feel tired.　　C. I am hungry.

四 听录音，填空完成句子。（10 分）

1. You can't eat too much _____.
2. There are so many _____ in the park.
3. What are you doing _____?
4. I'm _____. I can't go to the library with you.
5. Danny is _____ to the man behind him.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 根据图片及首字母提示写出单词，补全句子。（10 分）

1.　2.　3.　4.　5.

1. I am very thirsty. I want to drink some w_____.
2. There are some c_____ in the park.
3. Jack is drawing a p_____.
4. The little b_____ is Tom's brother.
5. My sister can d_____.

六 选择单词，并用其正确的形式填空。（10 分）

baby　woman　run　feel　take

1. These _____ are talking in the park.
2. Look! The boys are _____. Jack is the first.
3. My mother is sitting in the chair. She _____ tired.
4. May I _____ your pictures, Lily?
5. There are two _____. They are crying. It's too noisy（吵闹的）.

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. Bruce _____ dance, but he can't dance well.
A. wants　　B. wants to　　C. want to

（　）2. I'd like _____ candy and _____ egg.
A. a; a　　B. some; some　　C. some; an

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( ) 3. Bob and Mary are _____. They want to drink something.
A. hungry B. thirsty C. thirty

( ) 4. My grandfather _____ flowers in spring.
A. loves planting B. loves plants C. love planting

( ) 5. They arrive _____ Beijing _____ three o'clock _____ Sunday morning.
A. in; at; in B. in; in; on C. in; at; on

( ) 6. Danny and Jenny _____ to the hotel.
A. take a bus B. by bus C. riding a bike

( ) 7. What do you _____?
A. look B. see C. looking

( ) 8. _____ are many birds in the forest.
A. That B. There C. This

( ) 9. He is _____ the newspaper in his bedroom.
A. seeing B. looking C. reading

( ) 10. —_____ is the ruler? —It's 20 cm.
A. How far B. How old C. How long

八 根据图片选择合适的句子。(10 分)

( ) 1. A. The man is taking a picture.
B. The man is drawing a picture.



( ) 2. A. Please don't eat or drink here.
B. Please don't walk on the grass.



( ) 3. A. Some people are walking on the street.
B. The traffic light is red. You can't go now.



( ) 4. A. They are jumping on the playground.
B. They are running on the playground.



( ) 5. A. I am hungry. I want to eat some food.
B. I don't pass the exam. I am sad.



九 连词成句。(10 分)

1. is looking out not he of window the (.)

2. behind the me singing is woman (.)

3. I play may with cards you (?)

4. can very high kite Tom fly his (.)

5. afraid falling he into is of the water (.)

十 阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。(10 分)

Tony comes home from school. He wants to play football. But he has a lot of homework. "Hello, Tony," says his mother. "How is it going today?" "Fine, but I have a lot of homework," Tony says. "I'd like a bottle of milk." "Sorry, there isn't any. You can eat some cakes. But please don't eat too many cakes. We're going to have supper." Tony eats some cakes. Then he sits at the desk. He begins (开始) to do his homework. His mother goes to the shop. She wants to buy some milk and bread. There are not many people in the shop. She comes home soon (很快). Tony is still (仍然) doing his homework. "Tony, you're a good boy," his mother says. "You're going to do well this year." "But I can't play football today," Tony says sadly.

( ) 1. Tony is a student.
( ) 2. "How is it going today?" means "它正在走吗?"
( ) 3. Tony wants to have some cakes, but there isn't any.
( ) 4. Tony's mother goes to the shop to buy a football for her son.
( ) 5. When his mother comes home, Tony is doing his homework.

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

星期天天气晴朗，你和朋友去动物园。你们在动物园里看到了哪些动物？这些动物在干什么呢？请你试着写一写。

要求：请使用现在进行时态描述，不少于 5 句话。

密 封 线

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	分
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一　听录音，选出你所听句子中包含的选项。（5 分）

（　）1. A. dear dad　　B. dear mother　　C. dear mum

（　）2. A. how many　　B. how much　　C. how fun

（　）3. A. right　　B. left　　C. write

（　）4. A. use　　B. using　　C. borrow

（　）5. A. us　　B. me　　C. I

二　听录音，给下列图片排序。（5 分）







（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

三　听录音，选择正确的答案。（10 分）

（　）1. A. He will send a postcard to his mum.　　B. He will send a letter to his dad.
C. He will buy a stamp for the letter.

（　）2. A. It's ten yuan.　　B. They are nine yuan.
C. There are two pairs of shoes.

（　）3. A. You will see it.　　B. Go straight and turn left at the school.
C. I want to buy some stamps.

（　）4. A. It's cold and snowy.　　B. He feels hot.
C. There is no rain in summer.

（　）5. A. He has ten stamps.　　B. I'll take two.　　C. Yes, I need two.

四　听录音，补全对话。（10 分）

W：How are you?

M1：I'm 1. _____. What's wrong with you?

W：I want to send an 2. _____. But I don't have a computer.

M1：You can ask your teacher to help you.

W：Good 3. _____!

W：Hello, Mr. Li. Could I use your computer?

M2：Sure. It's there on your 4. _____.

W：Thanks, Mr. Li. It's very 5. _____ of you.

M2：You're welcome.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五　用方框中所给词的适当形式填空。（10 分）

we　be　use　sun　idea

1. The boy has a good _____.
2. It's hot and _____ in Shanghai.
3. May I _____ your computer to send an email?
4. Don't forget to write to _____.
5. There _____ a postcard and some letters in my desk.

六　单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. I want to send a postcard _____ my friend.
A. to　　B. and　　C. at

（　）2. _____ a great trip!
A. What's　　B. How　　C. What

（　）3. —What are you doing? —I'm _____ my friend a letter.
A. write　　B. writing　　C. writes

（　）4. Here is a picture _____ the Great Wall.
A. for　　B. of　　C. near

（　）5. —How much _____ this stamp? —It's ten yuan.
A. is　　B. are　　C. am

（　）6. You can _____ at the post office.
A. see a film　　B. send a letter　　C. buy clothes

（　）7. I'll be happy _____ you again.
A. to see　　B. see　　C. sees

（　）8. Tomorrow _____ go back to school.
A. you　　B. you're　　C. you'll

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( ) 9. I need stamps _____ three postcards _____ Shijiazhuang.

A. for; to B. of; to C. for; at

( ) 10. —How's the weather in Beijing in winter? —_____

A. There is no snow. B. It's sunny and hot. C. It's windy and cold.

七 选出错误的一项，并在横线上改正。(10 分)

( ) 1. Jenny is writing a email to Steven. A B C _____

( ) 2. This wall have a beautiful picture on it. A B C _____

( ) 3. Don't forget write your name last. A B C _____

( ) 4. —How many are those black T-shirts? —Fifteen yuan. A B C _____

( ) 5. Danny and Jenny wants to buy some postcards. A B C _____

八 连词成句。(10 分)

1. to postcards want buy I some (.)

_____

2. the Jack sending to letter is Canada (.)

_____

3. back tomorrow will home Mum and I go (.)

_____

4. down street walk the I (.)

_____

5. computer room there the is in a (.)

_____

九 读表格完成下面的短文。(12 分)

Name	What does he/she like?	Who does he/she send them to?	Where does he/she send them?
Bob	postcards	friends	to Shanghai
Mary	letters	family	to Guangzhou
Mike	emails	teachers	to London

Bob likes __1__. He sends them to his __2__. His friends are in Shanghai. Mary likes __3__. She sends them to her __4__. Her family are in Guangzhou. Mike likes __5__. He sends them to his __6__. His teachers are in London.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

十 请根据下面的明信片选择正确的答案。(10 分)

Friday, March 7

Dear Ben,

Now we are having fun in Beihai Park in Beijing. It's windy and cool here. There are many people in the park. I'm boating on the lake with my friend, Simon. In the evening, we'll visit the Water Cube and the Bird's Nest. I love the food in Beijing. It's delicious. And I love the people here. They are kind. I hope you can come to China soon.

Yours,

Lucy



Ben Simpson

10 Downing Street

London, the United Kingdom

( ) 1. Ben lives in _____.

A. Beijing B. Beihai Park C. London

( ) 2. Who writes the postcard?

A. Ben. B. Lucy. C. Simon.

( ) 3. How's the weather in Beijing?

A. It's windy and cold. B. It's windy and cool. C. It's sunny and cool.

( ) 4. Lucy loves the _____ in Beijing.

A. people B. food C. Both A and B.

( ) 5. Lucy will not visit _____ in Beijing.

A. the Great Wall B. the Water Cube C. the Bird's Nest

十一 书面表达。(8 分)

假如你是张强（邮箱：qiang@163.com），请给你的朋友 Mary（邮箱：Mary@qq.com）写一封电子邮件，说一说你的暑假计划。

要求：1. 表达清楚想去旅行的城市，去的理由及时间等；2. 不少于 5 句话。

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 过关检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出正确的图片。（5 分）

（　）1. A. 　B. 

（　）2. A. 　B. 

（　）3. A. 　B. 

（　）4. A. 　B. 

（　）5. A. 　B. 

二 听录音，找出与所听内容不相符的一项。（5 分）

（　）1. Danny learned English last night.
A　B　C

（　）2. Did you have fun in Canada?
A　B　C

（　）3. I often see Tom in the park.
A　B　C

（　）4. Everyone was very happy in the park.
A　B　C

（　）5. We missed you very much.
A　B　C

三 听录音，选择正确的答语。（10 分）

（　）1. A. Yes. I walked to school.　B. I played basketball.
C. I walked in the park.

（　）2. A. Yes, I did.　B. No, they didn't.　C. Yes, I do.

（　）3. A. I ate some apples.　B. I hurt my arm.　C. I was in the park.

（　）4. A. Yes, they are.　B. No, she doesn't.　C. Yes, she did.

（　）5. A. She was at home.　B. He went to the zoo with his parents.
C. She is at school.

四 听录音，补全句子。（10 分）

1. I'll tell you a _____ about the _____.
2. I _____ many _____ on the Great Wall.
3. Danny _____ a toy panda. He was very _____.
4. The girl _____ to the post office _____.
5. Jenny _____ an apple last _____.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. —_____ did you come back?
—At 5:00 in the afternoon.
A. Where　B. When　C. How

（　）2. These women _____ sleeping.
A. is　B. are　C. was

（　）3. Everyone _____ excited at the party yesterday.
A. is　B. was　C. were

（　）4. My mother goes to work by bus _____.
A. every day　B. tomorrow　C. yesterday

（　）5. Let me _____ a photo of you. Say cheese!
A. to take　B. took　C. take

（　）6. —Did your mother watch TV?
—_____
A. Yes, she does.　B. Yes, she did.　C. No, she did.

（　）7. What did you _____ for breakfast?
A. eat　B. ate　C. eats

（　）8. They bought many gifts _____ everyone.
A. for　B. of　C. at

（　）9. Let's _____ it _____ the wall.
A. put; at　B. to take; on　C. put; on

（　）10. He hurt his tail. He _____ sad.
A. is　B. feel　C. was

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

六 用所给单词的适当形式填空。(5分)

1. He _____ (walk) to school yesterday.
2. The children _____ (eat) apples now.
3. —Where _____ (be) you last night? —I was at home.
4. Steven _____ (play) football on Sundays.
5. —Did you have a nice trip? —Yes. I _____ (have) a fun trip.

七 根据图片提示，完成句子。(10分)

1.  2.  3.  4.  5. 

1. The boys _____ football at school two days ago.
2. My brother is _____ the clothes now.
3. They _____ to the zoo last Sunday.
4. I _____ my friend yesterday morning.
5. He _____ his parents every day.

八 按要求完成下列句子。(10分)

1. Danny went to school on foot yesterday. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

2. Did you have a nice trip? (作肯定回答)

_____

3. It's sunny today. (用 yesterday 改写句子)

_____

4. I went to the supermarket with Danny last week. (对画线部分提问)

_____

5. was seven years year he old last (.) (连词成句)

_____

九 选择合适的句子，补全对话。(10分)

A. I missed you, too.
B. Where did you go the second week?
C. It is so nice. I like it.
D. Did you have a good trip?
E. I have a gift for you.

Father: Welcome home, Jack! 1. _____

Jack: Yes. I had a great trip! I missed you, Dad!

Father: 2. _____ What did you do?

Jack: The first week I went to London. And I shopped there.

Father: 3. _____

Jack: I went to New York. It's a nice city. Dad, 4. _____ Here you are!

Father: 5. _____ Thank you, Jack!

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(15分)

Hello, my name is Jane. Yesterday I made a birthday chart (图表) for my family. My birthday is on June 3. My mother's birthday is on June 20. My grandmother's birthday is on July 15. My grandmother is in the U.S. She lives with my uncle Tom. So I often send emails to her for her birthday. There are two birthdays in May. My father's birthday is on May 24, and my cousin's birthday is on May 12. This is my family's birthday chart. I love my family.

(一) 按照生日的先后顺序，排一排 Jane 的家人吧！(5分)

_____ → _____ → _____ → _____ → _____

(二) 根据短文内容，判断正 (T) 误 (F)。(10分)

( ) 1. Jane's birthday is on May 12.
( ) 2. Three people's birthdays are in June.
( ) 3. Jane bought a gift for her grandmother on her birthday.
( ) 4. There are six people in the text.
( ) 5. Jane loves her family.

十一 书面表达。(10分)

请以“Last Sunday”为题，根据下面的提示写一篇短文，介绍一下你的周末。至少5句话。

1. Where did you go? 2. Who did you go with? 3. What did you do?

Last Sunday

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

期末检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	分
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你听到的单词。（5 分）

（　）1. A. sing　　B. walk　　C. jump

（　）2. A. second　　B. stand　　C. stop

（　）3. A. sleeping　　B. sitting　　C. singing

（　）4. A. night　　B. light　　C. right

（　）5. A. tomorrow　　B. yesterday　　C. now

二 听录音，给图片排序。（5 分）







（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

三 听录音，判断下列句子与所听内容是（T）否（F）相符。（10 分）

（　）1. The girl is watering the trees.

（　）2. I called my friend last night.

（　）3. The Palace Museum is about 600 years old.

（　）4. We can write our names on the Great Wall.

（　）5. I was in the park yesterday.

四 听录音，选择正确的答案。（10 分）

（　）1. I went on a trip last _____.

A. week　　B. month　　C. summer

（　）2. It was my first trip on a _____.

A. ship　　B. train　　C. plane

（　）3. I saw many houses, _____ and trees from the window.

A. parks　　B. farms　　C. hotels

（　）4. I watched a _____ on the plane.

A. TV　　B. film　　C. game

（　）5. I think it's _____ to go on a trip by plane.

A. good　　B. bad　　C. afraid

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 选择合适的词（组）填空。（10 分）

1. I'm _____ (sit, sitting) beside Linda on the train.
2. Some _____ (people, peoples) are playing in the park.
3. I want _____ (send, to send) a letter to Li Ming.
4. We watched TV _____ (yesterday, now).
5. —_____ (How much, How many) are the postcards?

—They are two yuan.

六 单项选择。（10 分）

（　）1. This is an email _____ Li Ming.

A. from　　B. in　　C. with

（　）2. You need a stamp _____ your letter.

A. to　　B. for　　C. at

（　）3. —Please don't walk on the grass.

—_____

A. That's all right.　　B. I'm sorry.　　C. Okay! You're welcome.

（　）4. We write _____ on paper.

A. postcard　　B. an email　　C. a letter

（　）5. Changchun is _____ Hainan. I need to take a plane.

A. near　　B. far　　C. far from

（　）6. We _____ in the library yesterday afternoon.

A. are　　B. were　　C. was

（　）7. Tom sees some cows on the farm _____.

A. every day　　B. yesterday　　C. last week

（　）8. The baby on the train is _____ now.

A. cry　　B. crying　　C. cries

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

( ) 9. —Did you have a nice trip? —Yes. I _____ a nice trip.
A. did B. do C. had

( ) 10. —_____ is the house? —It's about two hundred years old.
A. How long B. How many C. How old

七 给下列句子选择合适的答语。(10分)

( ) 1. Would you like some water?
( ) 2. Where is the bank?
( ) 3. What did you do yesterday?
( ) 4. What is the girl doing?
( ) 5. What do you like to do?

A. She is singing a song.
B. Yes, please.
C. It's over there.
D. I watched TV at home.
E. I like to read storybooks.

八 按要求，完成句子。(10分)

1. My mother often cleans the house. (用 yesterday 改写句子)
My mother _____ the house _____.
2. These old men are doing Tai Chi. (改成单数句)
_____ _____ _____ _____ doing Tai Chi.
3. Did you go to Shanghai last week? (作否定回答)
_____
4. I write a letter on paper. (用 email 改写句子)
I write _____ _____ on _____ _____.
5. Does he like this T-shirt? (作否定回答，说明原因是太大了)
_____. Because it is _____ _____ for _____.

九 选择合适的单词，补全下面的书信。(5分)

Dear Lucy,

I'm in Sichuan now. The weather is very __1__ in summer. But I'm __2__ fun here. The people here __3__ very kind. The food is peppery (辣的), but very delicious. My favourite food is *malatang*. I am coming home __4__ the U. K. on May 7. Yesterday I sent a __5__ to you. It has a picture of food on it. See you soon!

Yours,
Peter

( ) 1. A. hot B. cold C. cool
( ) 2. A. have B. has C. having
( ) 3. A. was B. are C. is
( ) 4. A. to B. of C. on
( ) 5. A. email B. letter C. postcard

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(15分)

Peter is a primary school pupil. He is ① a good boy. Uncle John lives ② next to him. Uncle John has ③ no child and can't see anything. He works in a factory near Peter's school. He goes to work at 7: 30 in the morning and comes home at 4: 30 in the afternoon.

Peter goes to school at 8: 00 in the morning and comes home at the same time as Uncle John in the afternoon. On weekdays, Peter gets up early to take Uncle John to the factory. On Sundays, Peter helps ④ Uncle John clean the house and do some cooking. Uncle John thanks Peter for helping him a lot. He says ⑤, "Peter is a good boy. He is like my son."

(一) 写出画线动词的过去式。(5分)

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

(二) 根据短文内容，选择正确答案。(10分)

( ) 1. What does Peter do?
A. He is a worker. B. He is a pupil. C. He is a teacher.

( ) 2. Uncle John comes home at _____ in the afternoon.
A. 7: 30 B. 4: 30 C. 8: 00

( ) 3. Peter gets up early to _____ on weekdays.
A. go to school B. run C. help Uncle John

( ) 4. Peter helps Uncle John clean the house _____.
A. from Monday to Sunday B. on weekdays C. on Sundays

( ) 5. Which of the following sentences is right?
A. Peter helps Uncle John a lot. B. Peter is Uncle John's son.
C. Peter is not a good boy.

十一 书面表达。根据提示，写一篇短文。(10分)

提示：今天是周末，我和姐姐在公园里玩。公园里人很多。一些孩子在唱歌；一些老人在打太极；一些男士在交谈。我和姐姐放风筝。我们玩得很开心。

要求：1. 用现在进行时；2. 不少于5句话。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



检测卷部分

Unit 1 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. The man is sleeping.
2. Jenny sees a red school on the train.
3. The boy wants to jump.
4. Please stand up.
5. Danny is looking at the dumplings.

二、1. Don't turn left.
2. I'd like some bread and tea.
3. The girl is reading a book.
4. Bruce is talking to his friend.
5. It's late. The boy runs to school.

三、**Text 1**

I'm Li Ming. I'm going on a trip to Beijing with my friends. There are many people on the train. Look! The girl is reading a book. The little boy is drawing a picture. The man behind me is looking out of the window. Some boys are playing cards. They are having fun.

Text 2

It's lunch time now. Li Ming, Jenny and Danny are in KFC. Li Ming would like some ice cream. Jenny would like some juice and Danny would like two hamburgers.

四、1. Rabbits like to jump and eat carrots.
2. Who is sleeping?
3. **W**: Tim, would you like some water?
M: No, thanks.
4. —What is the baby doing?
—He is crying.
5. —Where is Danny?
—He is behind the man.

答案：

一、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B
二、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A
三、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C
四、1. jump 2. Who 3. water 4. crying 5. man
五、1. picture 2. candy 3. Don't 4. woman
5. sleeping
六、1. C **点拨**：本题中 fruit 是不可数名词，用 some 修饰；apple 是以元音音素开头的单词，其前用冠词 an 修饰。
2. B 3. C 4. C 5. B
6. A **点拨**：look out of…向……外看；on the train 在火车上。
7. C
8. C **点拨**：arrive at 到达。在具体的某一时间点用介词 at；在具体某一天的早晨用介词 on。
9. B 10. A
七、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. B
八、1. Wang Ming is reading a book now.
2. No, thanks.
3. What is Danny doing?
4. Some girls are not playing on the playground.
5. Don't look out of the window.
点拨：本题原句是祈使句，变否定句时，在动词前加 Don't。
九、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. E
十、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
十一、**范文：**

In the park

Spring is coming. The park is beautiful. The grass is green. Flowers are red, yellow and pink. There are many people in the park. Look! Some children are playing football. Some women are talking under the tree. Some old men are playing chess.

Unit 2 过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. They arrive in Beijing in the afternoon.
2. There are many people in the park.
3. Jenny can fly her kite very high.
4. They are visiting the Palace Museum.
5. —What time is it?
—It's 2:30.

二、1. There are some old men in the park. They are doing Tai Chi.
2. She hurts her arm. She is sad.
3. —Where do you want to go?
—I want to go to the Great Wall.
4. I want to buy a scarf for my mother.
5. The girl feels very tired.

三、1. You can cross the road. What colour is the traffic light?
2. It's very old and long. Where do I want to go?
3. I'm hungry. Time for dinner. What time is it now?
4. I can fly a kite very high. Can you fly a kite?
5. Look! There are many people. What are they doing?

四、It's Sunday morning. Jenny, Danny and Li Ming are in a park. What can they see? There are three boys. They are playing football. There are some old women. They are singing a song. The song is so beautiful. Look! A girl is drawing a picture under a tree. Danny is near the river. He wants to fly a kite. But he hurts his arm.

答案：

一、1. A 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. A
二、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
四、1. park 2. three 3. singing a song 4. a
5. drawing
五、1. men **点拨**：根据 two 和 are 可知，此处应用复数形式。
2. stop 3. afraid 4. sad 5. tired
六、1. children 2. worry
3. Be **点拨**：祈使句以动词原形开头。am 的动词原形是 be。
4. pictures 5. says
七、1. A **点拨**：too many 修饰可数名词复数形式；too much 修饰不可数名词。没有 many too 的表达。
2. B 3. A 4. C
5. B **点拨**："need to do sth."表示"需要做某事"。
6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. B
八、1. waiting for 2. Can 3. easy 4. difficult
5. help
九、1—D 2—A 3—E 4—B 5—C
十、1. He looks in fifteen shops.
2. She is kind to her students.
3. What colour is your umbrella?
4. What do they see on their way to the hotel?
5. Some people are taking pictures on the square.
十一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T
十二、**范文：**

Today is Children's Day. My brother and I don't go to school. We go to the park. There are many people in the park. Two girls are playing happily. Some women are talking. There is a girl. She is taking pictures. There is a boy. He is drawing a picture. My brother and I are flying kites. It is easy for us. We are happy today.

期中检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. stand 2. boy 3. stop 4. thirsty
5. look out of
二、1. My brother is running in the park.
2. I'd like some noodles for breakfast.
3. Li Ming visits the Great Wall on Sunday.
4. The boys are playing football.
5. —What time is it?
—It's 8:00.
三、1. What's your father doing?
2. Can you fly a kite?
3. What are you doing now?
4. Would you like some juice?
5. Who is hungry?
四、1. You can't eat too much candy.
2. There are so many people in the park.
3. What are you doing now?
4. I'm busy. I can't go to the library with you.
5. Danny is talking to the man behind him.

答案：

一、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B
二、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B
三、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
四、1. candy 2. people 3. now 4. busy 5. talking
五、1. water 2. children 3. picture 4. boy 5. dance
六、1. women 2. running 3. feels 4. take 5. babies
七、1. B **点拨**："want to do…"表示"想做……"。Bruce 是第三人称单数，故 want 用单三形式 wants。
2. C 3. B
4. A **点拨**：love doing…"喜欢做……"；grandfather 是第三人称单数，love 用单三形式 loves。
5. C 6. A 7. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

8. B　点拨：这是 There be 句型的句子，表示某处有某物。

9. C　10. C

八、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. B　5. A

九、1. He is not looking out of the window.

2. The woman behind me is singing.

3. May I play cards with you?

4. Tom can fly his kite very high.

5. He is afraid of falling into the water.

十、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. F　5. T

十一、范文：

It's Sunday today. The weather is sunny and warm. I go to the zoo with my friend. We see many animals at the zoo. Look! The tiger is walking under a tree. There are some rabbits on the grass. They are jumping. I like monkeys. They are climbing the trees and playing. Look at the birds in the sky. They are flying. I like animals.

Unit 3　过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. Dear Mum, I miss you!

2. How much are the bananas?

3. Go straight and turn right.

4. Can I use your pen?

5. Say good-bye to your dad for me.

二、1. Do you have any paper?

2. My dad is writing a letter.

3. Is this your computer?

4. He is sending a postcard.

5. I want to send an email.

三、1. What will the man send to his mum?

2. How much are the shoes?

3. Where is the post office?

4. How's the weather in Beijing?

5. Do you need any stamps?

四、W：How are you?

M1：I'm fine. What's wrong with you?

W：I want to send an email. But I don't have a computer.

M1：You can ask your teacher to help you.

W：Good idea!

W：Hello, Mr. Li. Could I use your computer?

M2：Sure. It's there on your right.

W：Thanks, Mr. Li. It's very kind of you.

M2：You're welcome.

答案：

一、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B

二、5　1　2　3　4

三、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. A　5. C

四、1. fine　2. email　3. idea　4. right　5. kind

五、1. idea

2. sunny　点拨：sun 太阳，是名词；sunny 晴朗的，晴天的，是形容词。此处用表示天气的形容词。

3. use　4. us

5. is　点拨：在 There be 句型中，be 动词之后有若干名词时，be 动词的形式由离它最近的名词决定。postcard 是单数形式，故填 is。

六、1. A　2. C　3. B　4. B　5. A　6. B

7. A　点拨：be happy to do sth. 很高兴做某事。

8. C　9. A　10. C

七、1. B；an　点拨：email 是以元音音素开头的单词，其前的冠词用 an。

2. B；has

3. B；to write　点拨：forget to do…忘记做……

4. A；How much　5. A；want

八、1. I want to buy some postcards.

2. Jack is sending the letter to Canada.

3. Mum and I will go back home tomorrow.

4. I walk down the street.

5. There is a computer in the room.

九、1. postcards

2. friends　3. letters　4. family

5. emails　6. teachers

十、1. C　2. B　3. B　4. C　5. A

十一、范文：

To：Mary@qq.com

From：qiang@163.com

Subject：The summer plan.

Dear Mary,

How are you? The summer holidays are coming. I will go to Beijing next week. Beijing is our capital city. It's an old and famous city. There are many great places there. I hope you can come too.

Write soon.

Your friend,

Zhang Qiang

Unit 4　过关检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. This scarf is for you.

2. We were at the Palace Museum.

3. She washed her clothes.

4. She walked to school.

5. She is helping her mother.

二、1. Danny helped her mum last night.

2. Did you have fun in the U. K.?

3. I often play with Tom in the park.

4. The boy was very happy in the park.

5. We miss you very much.

三、1. Where did you walk?

2. Did you like it?

3. What happened?

4. Does she often swim?

5. Where was she?

四、1. I'll tell you a story about the photo.

2. I saw many people on the Great Wall.

3. Danny bought a toy panda. He was very happy.

4. The girl went to the post office yesterday.

5. Jenny ate an apple last night.

答案：

一、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. A

二、1. B　2. C　3. B　4. A　5. B

三、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. A

四、1. story；photo　2. saw；people　3. bought；happy

4. went；yesterday　5. ate；night

五、1. B　2. B

3. B　点拨：everyone 作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式；由 yesterday 可知句子的时态为一般过去时。

4. A　5. C　6. B　7. A　8. A　9. C　10. C

六、1. walked

2. are eating　点拨：now 表明动作正在发生，用现在进行时态。

3. were　4. plays　5. had

七、1. played　点拨：two days ago 两天前。

2. washing　3. went　4. called　5. helps

八、1. Did Danny go to school on foot yesterday?

2. Yes, I did.

3. It was sunny yesterday.

4. What did you do last week?

5. He was seven years old last year.

九、1. D　2. A　3. B　4. E　5. C

十、(一) Cousin; Father; Jane; Mother; Grandmother

(二) 1. F　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. T

十一、范文：

Last Sunday

Last Sunday I went to a library with my friend. There were many people in the library. They were quiet. And I saw some old men. They read books. My friend and I looked for our books fast. Then we read books. We were very happy.

期末检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. Don't jump on the train.

2. Please stand beside the desk.

3. My mother is tired. She is sleeping in bed.

4. Put the address on the right.

5. I went to the zoo with my parents yesterday.

二、1. May I take your picture?

2. The baby is crying now.

3. The old man is doing Tai Chi.

4. I bought a cap for my father.

5. I am writing an email on a computer.

三、1. W：What is the girl doing?

M：She is planting trees.

2. W：Did you call your friend last night?

M：Yes, I did.

3. W：How old is the Palace Museum?

M：It's about six hundred years old.

4. W：Don't write or draw on the Great Wall.

M：Sorry! I won't.

5. W：Where did you go yesterday?

M：I went to the park.

四、I went on a trip to Beijing last summer. We went there by plane. It was my first trip on a plane. I saw many houses, farms and trees from the window. I was so excited. And I watched a film on the plane. I think it's good to go on a trip by plane.

答案：

一、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. B

二、4　1　5　2　3

三、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. T

四、1. C　2. C　3. B　4. B　5. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、1. sitting

2. people　点拨：people 是集体名词，表示“人”时本身就具有复数的概念，不用加-s。

3. to send　4. yesterday　5. How much

六、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. C

5. C　点拨：far from 是固定用法，表示“离……远”。

6. B　7. A　8. B　9. C　10. C

七、1. B　2. C　3. D　4. A　5. E

八、1. cleaned；yesterday　2. This old man is

3. No，I didn't.

4. an email；a computer　点拨：注意 email 前的冠词用 an。

5. No；too big；him

九、1. A　2. C　3. B　4. A

5. C　点拨：根据后面一句“It has a picture of food on it.（它上面有一张食物的图片。）”，可知选 C，明信片。

十、（一）1. was　2. lived　3. had　4. helped　5. said

（二）1. B　2. B　3. C　4. C　5. A

十一、范文：

Today is Sunday. The weather is warm and sunny. My sister and I go to a park. There are many people in the park. Some children are singing. Some old men are doing Tai Chi. Some men are talking. My sister and I are flying a kite now. We are having fun.

课时部分

Unit 1　Going to Beijing

Lesson 1　I Am Excited!

一、1. dance　2. sing　3. jump　4. stands　5. runs

二、1. C

2. B　点拨：want to do…表示“想做……”。本句的时态是一般现在时。He 是第三人称单数，want 用单三形式。

3. A　4. B

5. A　点拨：祈使句以动词原形开头。

三、1. don't　点拨：祈使句的否定句形式，在动词前加 don't。

2. Mrs.　3. sit down

4. up　点拨：hands up 举手。

5. fly

四、1. Don't play basketball in the classroom.

Do your homework，please.

2. Don't run at the train station.

Walk，please.

3. Don't swim in the park.

Fly kites，please.

五、1. My friend walks to the bus.

2. He arrives at school at 7:00 every morning.

3. Please don't go straight.

4. I want to drink water.

六、1. B　2. E　3. D　4. C　5. A

七、（一）1. √　3. √　4. √　5. √

方法点拨：本题用关键信息定位法解答。解答本题时我们可以快速浏览文章，圈出有关 Amy 动作的词汇。然后根据圈出的词汇在相应的图片下打“√”。

（二）1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. T

Lesson 2　What Are You Doing?

一、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. C

二、1. boy　2. girls　3. pictures　4. looking　5. draw

三、1. A　点拨：look out of 表示“向……外面看”；look at 表示看具体的某一物体。

2. C

3. C　点拨：主语是 Jenny and Li Ming，是两个人，所以 be 动词用 are。

4. A　5. B

四、1. is reading　2. is cooking

3. What's；doing；She is watering

4. What's；doing；He is watching TV

5. are；doing；am doing my

五、1. D　2. E　3. C　4. A　5. B

六、（一）1. B

2. B　方法点拨：本题用联系上下文法解答。根据单词后面的句子“Some people are having lunch.（一些人在吃午饭）”，可知 midday 是“中午”的意思。

3. A　4. C　5. C

（二）1. It's September 10 today.

2. Miss Yang teaches English.

3. They are singing.

4. Yes，it is.

5. Lin Tao is washing apples.

Lesson 3　Who Is Singing?

一、1. man　2. woman　3. baby　4. crying　5. sleeping

二、1. B　2. C　3. A

4. B　方法点拨：本题可用主谓一致法解答。本句中主语为 The woman，是第三人称单数，所以动词用 is。

5. B

三、1. to play

2. me　点拨：behind 是介词，其后跟人称代词的宾格形式。

3. running　方法点拨：本题可用规律记忆法解答。规律：以重读闭音节结尾的动词，如果词尾只有一个辅音字母，变-ing 形式时，应双写词尾最后一个辅音字母，再加-ing。

4. says　5. are

四、1. E　2. A　3. C　4. D　5. B

五、1. Mr. Wang is not playing football.

2. Who is running?

3. Are you singing?　点拨：注意主语是第一人称的句子变一般疑问句时，第一人称要变成第二人称。

4. Yes，he is.

5. The girl is jumping.

六、1. B　2. D　3. C　4. E　5. A

七、　It's Sunday evening. All my family are at home. Look at us. What are we doing?

My mother is in the kitchen. She is washing the dishes. My grandmother is in her bedroom. She is reading the newspaper. My father is washing his hands. My grandfather and my sister are watching TV. What am I doing? I am doing my homework.

八、1. B　2. C　3. B　4. C　5. B

Lesson 4　Who Is Hungry?

一、1. water　2. hungry　3. tea　4. candy

二、1. D　2. C　3. E　4. F　5. A　6. B

Chinese food：B　D　F

Western food：A　C　E

中餐：steamed bun　西餐：hamburger

三、1. some　2. some；a　3. an；some　4. an；a

方法点拨：本题可用辨析法解答。some（一些）用于可数名词复数形式和不可数名词前；a 用于以辅音音素开头的单词前，an 用于以元音音素开头的单词前。例如：第 2 小题中“boys”是复数形式，前面填 some；“girl”是可数名词单数形式，且是以辅音音素开头的单词，前面填 a；第 3 小题中“egg”是以元音音素开头的单词，前面填 an。

四、1. B　2. C　3. A

4. C　点拨：答语回答的是人，提问人用疑问词 who。

5. B

五、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B

六、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. T

七、1. E　2. A　3. D　4. C　5. B

八、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. C

Lesson 5　What Are They Doing?

一、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. C

二、1. are　2. are not　3. having

4. walks　点拨：由“every morning”可知，此句的时态是一般现在时，Tom 是第三人称单数，动词用单三形式。

5. have

三、1. A　2. C　3. C

4. B　点拨：第一句句意：我找不到丹尼。可知“我”不知道他在哪儿。提问地点用疑问词 where。

5. A

四、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. B

五、1. There you are.

2. I can't find my dog.

3. May I play cards with you?

4. What is the woman doing now?

5. The woman behind me is reading.

六、1. B　2. D　3. C　4. E　5. A

七、1. B　2. B　3. B　4. A　5. C

八、范文：

There are many students on the playground. Look! A boy is running. A girl is jumping. Some students are playing with a ball. Some are talking. Two students are playing table tennis. They are happy.

口语能力 PK 台

一、1. Go straight.　2. Don't ride a bike.

3. Don't turn right.　4. No parking.

二、1. —What is she doing?　—She is singing.

2. —What is she doing?　—She is crying.

3. —What are they doing?　—They are reading.

4. —What are they doing?

—They are planting a tree.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lesson 6 Danny Is Lost!

课内阅读对点练

一、(一)1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. B

(二)1. × 2. √ 3. √ 4. ×

(三)1. going on a trip 2. stand 3. looks for 4. buying fruit 5. runs to 6. jumps

拓展阅读提升练

二、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

三、(一)4 3 1 2

(二)1. hot; dry 2. a little 3. too small 4. collects 5. clever

四、(一)1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

(二)1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

Again, Please!

听力专练

听力材料:

一、1. —What would you like?

—I'd like some candy.

2. Look at the sign. Don't eat or drink.

3. The students are drawing pictures.

4. The man is walking.

5. He is thirsty. He is drinking.

二、1. We can't sing in the library.

2. The girl behind the tree is playing with a cat.

3. **W**: Would you like some chicken?

M: No, thanks. I'd like some fish.

4. Look! Jenny and her friend are flying a kite.

5. My father is reading a newspaper in his room.

三、1. Who is crying?

2. What would you like to eat for lunch?

3. Are you hungry? 4. May I play with you?

5. What are the boys doing now?

四、It's Sunday morning. Now it's 10:00. Lily is doing homework at home. Grandmother is talking to Grandfather. Parents are shopping in the supermarket. They need to buy some food for lunch. Lily would like some tomatoes, eggs and rice for lunch. Grandmother and Grandfather would like some fish and rice. So what will they buy?

答案:

一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. A

二、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T

三、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

四、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A

读写专练

五、1. tea 2. candy 3. baby 4. hungry 5. draw

六、1. picture 2. is 3. trees 4. talking 5. swimming 6. What 7. playing

七、1. It's on November 20.

2. Her friends Peter, Gao Wei and Li Yan will come to her birthday party.

3. She'd like a fruit cake.

4. A star one.

5. Yes, she does.

八、范文:

This is Tim's family. Look! Tim's father is washing the clothes. Tim's mother is making lunch. Tim's brother is playing cards with his sister. What is Tim doing? He is drawing a picture.

Unit 2 In Beijing

Lesson 7 Arriving in Beijing

一、1. B C G I 2. A F J

3. D K 4. E H

二、1. are 2. on

3. children **方法点拨**:本题可用**特殊记忆法**解答。child 的复数形式为 children,属于不规则变化,要特殊记忆。

4. Many 5. This

三、1. B 2. C

3. B **点拨**:根据答语中的"he is"可知,问句的主语应该是男性并且为单数。girl 女孩;boy 男孩;men 男人们。

4. C

5. A **点拨**:本题主语为 The man,而短语 in red shorts 为修饰语,所以要选用单数的形式 is running。

四、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. E 5. A

五、1. C 2. B 3. D 4. E 5. A

六、1. These are children. They are cleaning the room.

2. These are men. They are running.

3. These are boys. They are playing football.

方法点拨:本题用**举一反三法**解答。观察示例可知本题是要把单数句变成复数句。每小题中不同的是人物和活动,所以我们可以提炼出固定句型结构:These are + 名词复数. They are + 动词(短语)的-ing 形式. 例如,1 小题中名词复数是 children;动词短语的-ing 形式是 cleaning the room。

七、1. When do they get to the restaurant?

2. They are on their way to the hotel.

3. Some children are reading books now.

4. There are many people in the park.

5. Some old women are singing and dancing.

八、(一)1. B 2. B 3. C

4. 有一个男人正在地上写书法。

5. The children are playing football.

(二)1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A

Lesson 8 Tian'anmen Square

一、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B

二、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B

三、1. girls 2. play 3. children 4. hurts 5. taking

四、1. B **点拨**:worry about…担心……

2. C 3. A

4. B **方法点拨**:本题可用**固定句型法**解答。There be 句型的句型结构:There is + 可数名词单数/不可数名词 + 其他;There are + 可数名词复数形式 + 其他。本题中 boy 是可数名词单数,选 is。

5. B

五、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

六、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

七、1. D 2. E 3. A 4. B 5. C

八、1. It's near our school. 2. We can see a river.

3. It's Sunday. 4. They are playing games.

5. Peter and Sam are sitting under the tree.

Lesson 9 The Palace Museum

一、1. take your picture 2. sunny

3. hurts his arm 4. falling

5. Palace Museum

二、1. C 2. B

3. C **点拨**:"Please be careful."是一个祈使句,其中 be 动词是动词原形。

4. A

5. C **方法点拨**:本题用**固定搭配法**解答。take one's picture 给某人拍照,是固定搭配。

三、1. How 2. What colour

3. How old **点拨**:How old 除了用于询问年龄之外,还可以用于询问某建筑的历史有多久。

4. What 5. Who

四、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

五、1. My sister hurts her finger.

2. What do you see in the room?

3. May I ride your bike?

4. Let's look in the window!

5. There are some pens and one pencil on the desk.

六、1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A

七、1. It's about 600 years old.

2. It's behind Tian'anmen Square.

3. There are about 9000 rooms.

4. There are four gates.

八、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T

Lesson 10 The Great Wall

一、1. C; feel 2. D; stop 3. B; tired

4. E; waiting 5. A; afraid

二、1. take 2. buses 3. feels 4. be 5. kilometers

三、1. 买 2. 乘坐 3. 拍照 4. 车站 5. 停下来

四、1. B **方法点拨**:本题用**固定短语法**解答。固定短语 on the way back to…表示"在返回……的路上"。

2. B

3. B **方法点拨**:本题用**同义词辨析法**解答。look 表示"看",强调看的动作、过程;see 表示"看见",强调看的结果。

4. B **点拨**:"need to + 动词原形"表示"需要做……"。

5. A

五、1. C 2. D 3. B 4. E 5. A

六、1. How old is your grandpa?

2. He is running to the classroom.

点拨:注意 run 的-ing 形式是 running。

3. Don't be afraid to speak English.

点拨:祈使句变否定句时,在动词前加 Don't。

4. They need to take a taxi.

5. How long is the yellow scarf?

七、(一)1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B

(二)1. Yes, it is.

2. It is about 6000 kilometers long.

3. It was difficult to build the Great Wall.

4. Yes, it is.

5. Yes, I do. Because it's great. (答案不唯一)

Lesson 11 Shopping in Beijing

一、1. shopping 2. hungry 3. kind

4. Thursday 5. Can

二、1. B **方法点拨**:本题用**固定搭配法**解答。go shopping(购物)是固定短语;love doing…表示"喜欢做……"。

2. C **点拨**:with 在此处不是"和……"的意思;此

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

处表示“带着……”。

3. C　4. A　5. B

三、1. has　2. by　3. fifth　4. young　5. Be

四、1. I want to buy some flowers for my mother.

2. What do you want to buy for your brother?

3. What do you want to buy for your sister?

I want to buy a book for my sister.

五、1. sunny　2. shopping　3. looks

4. to buy　5. feels　6. waiting

六、1. D　2. B　3. E　4. C　5. A

七、1. a doll　2. my cousin　3. a shirt

4. my grandfather

5. my grandmother　6. a watch

7. my father　8. a beautiful dress

八、范文：

It's Sunday today. My parents and I are in Beijing. We visit the Palace Museum and the Great Wall. The Palace Museum is beautiful. And the Great Wall is the longest wall in the world. Now we are climbing the Great Wall. I feel tired but I don't want to stop. There are many people on the Great Wall. They are taking pictures.

口语能力 PK 台

一、1. There are some girls. They are singing.

2. There are some men. They are running.

二、1. It is in Beijing.

2. It is about 600 years old.

3. It's red and yellow.

Lesson 12　A Visit to the Great Wall

课内阅读对点练

一、(一)1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. T

(二)1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. C

(三)Don't write your name on the wall.

Don't throw rubbish. Take your rubbish away.

(答案不唯一)

拓展阅读提升练

二、(一)5　4　3　1　2

(二)1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C

三、(一)6　1　2　4　5　3

(二)1. B　2. C　3. C　4. B　5. A

Again, Please!

听力专练

听力材料：

一、1. The Palace Museum is great.

2. Some old men are playing Tai Chi.

3. Oh, he hurts his arm.

4. May I take your picture?

5. —How do you feel?

—I feel very tired.

二、1. When do they arrive in Beijing?

2. What are the women doing?

3. How old is the Palace Museum?

4. What colour are the flowers?

5. What do you see on the square?

三、Father's Day is coming. The students are talking about it.

Tom: Jenny, what do you want to buy for your father?

Jenny: I want to buy some tea for my father. He likes tea. What about you, Tom?

Tom: I want to buy trousers for my father. His trousers are old.

Jenny: You are a good boy. What does your sister Lily buy?

Tom: She wants to buy a cake for my father.

Jenny: Your father will be happy. What about Bruce? Do you know?

Tom: He wants to buy some ice-cream for his father. They can eat it together.

四、1. I have a lot of homework. I am very busy now.

2. Don't be afraid. I can help you.

3. Listen! A boy is calling for help.

4. These children are playing football.

5. Stop. There are too many cars.

答案：

一、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. A　5. C

方法点拨：本题用**听关键词法**解答。在听听力材料之前，我们要先快速浏览图片，了解每个小题要听的关键信息。例如，1 小题给出的是三个景点的图片，那么我们在听的时候就要特别注意提到的景点词汇。明确每小题要抓住的关键信息，才能少出错。

二、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. A

三、1—C　2—A　3—D　4—B

四、1. busy　2. afraid　3. help　4. children　5. Stop

读写专练

五、1. the Palace Museum　2. the Great Wall

3. a bus stop　4. the Bird's Nest

六、1. On my way to　2. far from　3. arrive at

4. women　5. doing Tai Chi　6. afraid of

7. can't　8. help

七、(一)1. F　2. T　3. F　4. F

(二)1. They are talking about dreams in the future.

2. Gao Shan wants to be a policeman.

3. Because he wants to fly in the sky.

4. I want to be a cook. Because I want to cook delicious food. (答案不唯一)

八、范文：

There are some children in front of the Palace Museum. Two children are playing with a ball. A girl is having a rest on the bench. They feel very happy. The Palace Museum is about 600 years old. There are many rooms in the Palace Museum. The Palace Museum is red and yellow. It's very beautiful.

Unit 3　Writing Home

Lesson 13　Let's Buy Postcards!

一、1. B　2. A　3. A　4. B

5. C　**点拨**：句子中的 postcard 是单数形式，而 A，B 选项都是复数形式的代词。

二、1. A

2. C　**方法点拨**：本题用**④定搭配法**解答。send sth. to sb. 表示“给某人寄某物”，是固定搭配。

3. C　**点拨**：want to do… 表示想做……；she 是第三人称单数，因此 want 加-s。

4. B　5. B

三、1. paper　**点拨**：paper 是不可数名词。

2. pictures　3. look　4. write

5. are　**点拨**：postcards 是复数形式，故 be 动词用 are。

四、1. picture　2. a picture of the Great Wall

3. a letter; my mum　4. send an email to Lily

五、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. F

六、1. D　2. E　3. A　4. C　5. B

七、1. B　2. E　3. D　4. A　5. C

八、(一)1. √　2. √

(二)1. F　2. T

(三)1. He is writing a postcard.

2. No, she isn't.

3. It's three yuan.

Lesson 14　Jenny Writes a Postcard

一、1. dad　2. left　3. first　4. far　5. big

二、1. C　**点拨**：此处用 and 表示并列关系。but 表示转折关系；so 表示因果关系。

2. C　**点拨**：根据前一句句意判断，本句要表达“忘记做某事”。

3. B　4. A　5. A

三、1. E　2. D　3. A　4. B　5. C

四、1. I want to send this postcard to my mum and dad.

2. We are having fun in Beijing.

3. Where do you write on a postcard?

4. Don't forget the stamp.

5. It has a picture of the Palace Museum.

五、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B

六、1. B　2. F　3. A　4. C　5. E　6. D

七、1. C　**方法点拨**：此题用**关键信息定位法**解答。句意：这封信来自____。要想知道写信的人，我们只需要看署名就可以。通常信的署名都在最后，因此我们直接定位到信的最后“Love, Mike”，可知信来自 Mike。

2. C　3. A　4. A　5. B

Lesson 15　Sending the Postcards

一、1. Turn　2. fine　3. need　4. much　5. wrong

二、1. A　2. C

3. C　**点拨**：第一句句意：六加七等于十二。这是错误的，故选“You are wrong.”。

4. C　**点拨**：be 动词后边的动词要加-ing，write 去 e 加-ing，write sth. to sb. 是固定搭配。

5. A

三、1. that　2. is this　3. are those　4. are these

四、1. turn; zoo　2. restaurant　3. right; left　4. far

五、1. D　2. E　3. B　4. C　5. A

六、1. Where is the post office?

2. How many pens will you take?

3. What do you need?

4. Who is writing an email?

5. How much are the pants?

七、(一)1. A　2. C　3. B

(二)4. A　5. B

6. How can I get to the Garden Hotel, please?

Lesson 16　An Email Is Fast

一、1. letter　2. email　3. computer　4. use

5. idea

二、1. stamps　**方法点拨**：本题用**常识法**解答。根据常识我们可知，发邮件不需要邮票。

2. tomorrow　**点拨**：will 表明句子的时态是一般将来时，选未来的时间。tomorrow 明天；yesterday 昨天。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. see 4. good 5. are

三、1. B 2. B

3. C 点拨：Good idea! 表示赞同别人的建议。

4. B

5. C 点拨：an email 作主语，谓语动词应用第三人称单数，need 用作实义动词，因此否定句借助 doesn't。

四、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

五、句子顺序：3 1 4 2 5

图片顺序：E D A C B

六、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. E

七、(一) 1. F 2. F 3. T

(二) 1. A 2. B 3. C

4. B 方法点拨：本题用细节理解法解答。根据信中原句“I'm glad to hear you can come on Sunday.（我很高兴听到你星期天要过来。）”可知，Linda 星期天拜访 Mary。

5. B

Lesson 17 Danny's Email

一、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. C

二、1. writes 点拨：根据 on Sundays 判断句子的时态是一般现在时，主语是第三人称单数，故填 writes。

2. snowy

3. having 点拨：因为有 be 动词 am，所以 have 要用现在分词形式，去 e 加-ing。

4. me 点拨：介词后边用人称代词的宾格形式。

5. be 方法点拨：本题用规律记忆法解答。规律：will 后跟动词原形，be 是 am, is, are 的原形。

三、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

四、1. is writing 2. sunny 3. Are there; computers

4. Don't; write 5. Is; kind

五、1. C 2. A 3. E 4. D 5. B

六、(一) 邮件中圈出：To; rose@ supermail. com

From; brian@ compmail. ca

Subject; A trip to Shanghai.

改正：1. To; brian@ compmail. ca

2. From; rose@ supermail. com

3. Subject; A trip to Harbin.

方法点拨：本题用常识法解答。本题考查邮件的格式。To 后面是收件人的地址；From 后面是寄件人的地址。主题要和正文内容一致，邮件的正文是去哈尔滨的旅行，而主题是“一次去上海的旅行”，与正文内容不一致。

(二) 1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

七、范文：

Sunday, May 10 Dear Mum, How are you ? Mother's Day is coming. Happy Mothers' Day! I miss you! Your son, Mingming	 236 Park Road Beijing, China

口语能力 PK 台

二、1. —How much is the postcard?

—It's 1 yuan.

2. —How much is the computer?

—It's 6000 yuan.

3. —How much are the shorts?

—They're 50 yuan.

4. —How much are the shoes?

—They're 40 yuan.

Lesson 18 Little Zeke Sends an Email

课内阅读对点练

一、(一) 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C

(二) 4 1 6 3 7 2 5

(三) 1. She lives in Ottawa.

2. Because Jenny wants to tell Emma about her trip.

3. She is sleeping.

4. He feels tired.

拓展阅读提升练

二、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

三、(一) 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

(二) 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. B

Again, Please!

听力专练

听力材料：

一、1. I want to send a letter to my mum.

2. Turn left at the traffic lights.

3. This postcard has a picture of the Palace Museum.

4. Mike is writing an email on the computer.

5. —How much is the stamp?

—It's 80 fen.

二、1. I write a letter on paper.

2. We are having fun in Beijing.

3. Please put the address on the right.

4. How much are these postcards?

5. Don't forget to write to us.

三、1. How much are the stamps?

2. Where do you write on a postcard?

3. What are you doing?

4. Where is the bookshop?

5. What will you do?

四、1. How much are the postcards?

2. Danny puts the address on the right.

3. You are wrong.

4. My teacher is very kind.

5. A letter is slow.

答案：

一、5 2 4 1 3

二、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

三、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A

四、1. much 2. right 3. wrong 4. kind 5. slow

读写专练

五、1. postcard 2. letter 3. email

4. traffic lights 5. stamp

六、1. postcards 2. wrong 3. buy 4. post office

5. turn right 6. left 7. writes 8. forgets to

9. send 10. kind

七、(一) 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

(二) 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B

八、范文：

To; Mike@ supermail. com

From; Anna@ compmail. ca

Subject; How are you?

Dear Mike,

How are you? It's sunny and hot in Shanghai now. I can eat ice cream. I often go swimming with my mother on the weekend. I like swimming. It's fun. The summer holiday is coming. Would you like to come to Shanghai?

Write soon.

Your friend,

Anna

Unit 4 Did You Have a Nice Trip?

Lesson 19 Li Ming Comes Home

一、1. played; worked missed looked walked wanted

2. loved; lived liked

3. planned; shopped stopped

二、1. often 2. Yesterday; often

3. often 4. Yesterday; often

三、1. B 点拨：last night“昨天晚上”，表示过去的时间。因此动词要用过去式。

2. C

3. B 点拨：at home 在家，固定搭配。

4. A 5. A

四、(一) 1. go shopping 2. call friends

(二) 1. had

2. She went shopping at 9:00.

3. What did Mike do at 10:00?

He called friends at 10:00.

五、1. I walked to the school.

2. I often play football.

3. Yes, I did.

4. He/ My father watched TV.

5. I went to a library.

六、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. C

七、(一) 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

(二) A. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T

5. T 方法点拨：本题用联系上下文法。短文倒数第六句“Sometimes we stayed in small houses in the mountains.”意为：有时候我们住在山里的小房子里。倒数第二句“There were beautiful lakes near the houses.”意为：房子附近有漂亮的湖。结合这两句可知“小房子附近有山和湖”。

B. 1. B 方法点拨：本题用同义词替换法解答。短文第二句“I went across the U. S. with my family by car.”中的“the U. S.”和题目中 B 选项“America”都是“美国”的意思，是同义词。故选 B。

2. B 3. C 4. A

Lesson 20 Jenny Goes Home

一、1. went 2. saw 3. ate 4. did 5. had

二、1. B 点拨：根据句意得知，要表达的是“第二天”，因此选序数词。

2. C 3. A 4. A

5. C 点拨：问句是助动词 did 开头的一般疑问句，答语也用 did 回答。

三、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

四、1. B; people 2. B; watch 3. C; yesterday

4. C; a book

五、1. ate 2. see; I saw 3. go; I went to the library

4. play; I played on a computer/played computer games

六、1. miss 2. had 3. go 4. for 5. went

七、(一) 1. B 2. A 3. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(二)1. Under the tree.
2. Because the tiger wanted to eat the monkey.
3. No, he couldn't.
4. Because the monkey was very afraid.
5. No, he couldn't.

Lesson 21 Look at the Photos!

一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. A
二、1. was; am 2. was; is
3. was; is 点拨:2000 年是过去的时间,所以第一个空填 was。
4. were; are 点拨:one year ago 一年前。
5. are; be
三、1. photos 2. were 3. Did 4. Danny's
5. hurt 点拨:hurt 的过去式还是 hurt。
四、1. C 2. C 3. B
4. B 点拨:根据答语可知选择过去时态。
5. A
五、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C
六、1. Did you play with the baby? 方法点拨:本题用规律记忆法解答。一般过去时的句子变一般疑问句的规律:助动词提前,谓语动词变成原形。第一人称要变成第二人称。本题助动词用 Did。
2. are small now
3. Li Ming was short in 2008.
4. We were not very happy yesterday.
5. No, I didn't.
七、1. C 2. B 3. E 4. D 5. A
八、(一)1. B 2. A 3. B
(二)4. A 5. C 6. A 7. B

Lesson 22 Gifts for Everyone

一、1. a big cap 2. a white wall 3. a small T-shirt
4. a beautiful kite 5. a gift
二、1. C
2. A 点拨:a new cap 用代词 it 指代;代词和 try on 连用时,放在 try 和 on 中间。
3. B 4. C 5. B
三、1. will buy; bought 2. walks; is walking
3. is reading; reads 4. went; go
5. watched; am watching
四、1. Here is a kite for Mr. Wood.
2. Can you put it on the wall?
3. My favourite colour is yellow.
4. The shorts are too long for me.
5. These gifts are from China.
五、1. No; I ate dumplings.
2. No; It was rainy.
3. Yes 4. Yes
5. No; No. It's too big for me.
六、(一)4 5 3 1 2
(二)1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B

Lesson 23 An Email from Li Ming

一、1. C 点拨:postcards 是可数名词复数形式,所以 be 动词用 are。
2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
二、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
三、1. is 2. was 3. wanted to 4. hurt 5. helped
6. went back
四、1. Tom buys a sweater today.
Tom bought a T-shirt yesterday.
2. Ben watches TV today.
Ben watched a film yesterday.
点拨:注意在一般现在时的句子中,主语是第三人称单数时,动词用单三形式。
五、1. B 2. E 3. D 4. A 5. C
六、1. I didn't have a great time in Beijing.
2. Did you miss me?
3. What did you do?
4. No, I didn't.
5. I did my homework. (答案不唯一)
七、(一)

Yesterday	Usually
ate dinner	get up at 12:00
went to work	play sports
went home	watch TV
ate breakfast	climb the mountains
went to bed	go hiking

(二)1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B
八、范文:
I'm Jack. Look at this photo. I took this photo last Sunday. We were in the park with our English teacher. We went there by bus. We played games there. We had a good time. I like this photo very much.

口语能力 PK 台
1. Mike's mother went shopping last Sunday.
2. Mike's father watched TV last Sunday.
3. Mike's brother went to the zoo last Sunday.

Lesson 24 A Gift for Little Zeke

课内阅读对点练
一、(一)1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
(二)1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B
(三)1. lives 2. puts; on 3. had; for
4. watched; wanted 5. letter
6. bed from

拓展阅读提升练
二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A
三、(一)1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B
(二)1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F

Again, Please!

听力专练
听力材料:
一、1. Look! This is a photo of my family.
2. I hurt my leg yesterday. I can't run now.
3. I'm happy today.
4. I often read storybooks at night.
5. My mother bought a gift for me on my birthday.
二、1. I visited my grandmother last week.
2. I had some chicken soup and vegetables.
3. I go to the cinema on Sundays.
4. Dave was seventeen years old.
5. I watched a film. It was interesting.
三、Mary comes from the U. K. She went to Beijing by plane last week. Mary visited the Great Wall, the Water Cube and the Bird's Nest. She took many beautiful pictures in Beijing. Mary ate the Beijing Roast Duck. But she didn't eat dumplings in Beijing.
四、Mike's family went to Beidaihe last year. Mike was very happy there. They went to the sea and played in the sand. Mike's parents walked on the beach. Then they had dinner in a restaurant beside the sea. They came back to the hotel at about ten o'clock. They were all very tired.
答案:
一、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B
二、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C
三、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F
四、1. was 2. went 3. played 4. walked 5. were

读写专练
五、1. went 2. were 3. saw
4. watching 5. writing 6. doing
六、1. Mike; Tom
2. played football; played football
3. didn't 4. watch a film
5. went shopping
七、(一)1. Anna 2. Lily 3. Xiao Fang
(二)4. F 5. F 6. T
(三)7. I did my homework at home yesterday.
8. My mother went shopping last weekend.
(7,8 小题答案不唯一)
八、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
九、范文:
Last week, my friend and I went to Beijing. It was a fine day. We went to Beijing by train. We went to the Palace Museum in the morning. In the afternoon, we went to Wangfujing Street. I bought some tea for my father. I bought a dress for my mother. It was a busy and fun day.

期末复习训练部分

Unit 1 复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关
一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C
二、1. Who 2. water 3. sorry 4. talk 5. woman
三、1. to 2. with 3. at 4. out 5. behind

句型语法过关
四、1. C 2. B
3. A 点拨:看报纸是"read the newspaper"。
4. A 点拨:egg 是以元音音素开头的单词,前面用冠词 an 表示"一个"。
5. C
6. A 点拨:talk to…和……交谈;behind 是介词,其后用人称代词的宾格形式。
7. B 8. B 9. C 10. A
五、1. washing 2. isn't
3. play 4. sit
5. bananas; candy
六、1. is running
2. am reading a book
3. are drinking tea

综合运用过关
七、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. E

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

八、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. C

Unit 2　复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. A　E　I　K　2. B　D　H　J
　3. C　F　G　L

二、1. for　2. his　3. too　4. in　5. on

句型语法过关

三、1. women
　2. is　**点拨**：There be 句型的就近原则：当 be 动词后面有若干名词时，be 动词的形式与离它最近的名词保持一致。
　3. sunny　4. take　5. shopping/ to shop

四、1. C　**点拨**：由 falls 可知句子的时态是一般现在时，hurt 用单三形式。
　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. A　6. C
　7. B　**点拨**：need to 后跟动词原形，表示“需要做……”。
　8. A　9. B　10. B

五、1. girls；dancing；happy
　2. men；working；busy
　3. These babies are crying. They are hungry.

六、1. May I ride your bike?
　2. Li Ming buys some tea for his father.
　3. He is afraid of falling into the water.
　4. There is a bus stop beside the school.
　5. You can't walk to the hotel with that.

综合运用过关

七、1. C　2. D　3. E　4. B　5. A

八、1. Ted lives on a farm in the country.
　2. Ted goes to school on foot.
　3. They are playing together.
　4. Yes，there is.

Unit 3　复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. computer　2. right　3. wrong　4. writing　5. left

二、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. D　5. D

三、1. of　2. on　3. for；to　4. from　5. at

句型语法过关

四、1. us　2. sleeping　3. snowy　4. stamps　5. those

五、1. A　2. B　3. C　4. C　5. A　6. C　7. B　8. B
　9. C　**点拨**：will 后跟动词原形，be 是 am，is，are 的动词原形。
　10. C

六、1. There isn't a picture on the wall. /There is no picture on the wall.
　2. Can I use the computer?
　3. Do you need any stamps?
　4. You write a letter on paper.
　5. You will see the bookshop on the left.

综合运用过关

七、1. B　2. E　3. D　4. C　5. A

八、(一)1. B　2. A　3. D　4. C　5. E
　(二)1. F　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. T

Unit 4　复习训练

重难点过关检测

词汇过关

一、1. called　missed　walked
　2. had　went　ate　were　saw
　3. liked　lived　4. shopped

二、1. C　2. D　3. A　4. C　5. D

三、1. saw　2. this　3. shopped　4. was　5. walked

句型语法过关

四、1. singing　2. did
　3. had　**点拨**：last week 上周。
　4. watch　5. ate

五、1. C　2. A
　3. B　**点拨**：will 表明句子的时态是将来时。tomorrow(明天)是表示将来的时间。
　4. A　5. B　6. C　7. A　8. A
　9. C
　10. B　**点拨**：try on 试穿。与代词连用时，代词放在 try 和 on 的中间；shoes 是可数名词的复数形式，代词用 them。

六、1. Where；went　2. happened；hurt
　3. What；bought　4. When；had

七、1. I did my homework last night.
　2. Mike had lunch at school yesterday.
　3. Did Tom walk to school last week?
　4. How old were you last year?
　5. He is reading a book now.

综合运用过关

八、1. D　2. A　3. C　4. B　5. E

九、1. Last Friday was her birthday.
　2. She felt very sad.
　3. At 6 o'clock.
　4. They played games and ate the birthday cake together.
　5. Yes，they did.

典点®

活页检测卷

后附全书参考答案及点拨

五年级
英语 下
JJ版

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Going to Beijing

Lesson 1 I Am Excited!

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. run 跑　2. jump 跳；跳跃　3. sing 唱；演唱　4. dance 跳舞
5. sit 坐　6. stand 站立；直立　7. up 向上；在上面　8. down 向下；朝下；沿着
9. sorry 对不起，不好意思（道歉时用）　10. sit down 坐下　11. stand up 站起来
12. want to… 想要……

二、我要掌握的句型

1. They arrive at the train station. 他们到达火车站。
2. Please don't run! 请不要跑！　3. Walk, please. 请走着。

课文朗读

翻译达人秀

1. Please don't run!

原文	译文
It's Monday morning. Mrs. Li, Li Ming, Jenny and Danny go to Beijing today. They arrive at the train station. Danny runs to the train.	今天是星期一上午。李夫人、李明、詹妮和丹尼今天去北京。他们到达火车站。丹尼跑向火车。
1. Danny! Please don't run!	1. 丹尼！请不要跑！
2. Walk, please, Danny. Sorry.	2. 请走着，丹尼。 对不起。
3. I'm excited! Me, too! I want to jump!	3. 我很兴奋！ 我也是！我想跳！
4. I want to sing! I want to dance!	4. 我想唱歌！我想跳舞！
5. Please don't jump! Please don't sing! Please don't dance! I'm sorry.	5. 请不要跳！ 请不要唱歌！请不要跳舞！ 我很抱歉。
6. That's okay, Danny. Please sit down. Yes, Mrs. Li. I'm sitting down. Yikes!	6. 没关系，丹尼。请坐下。 好的，李夫人。我正在坐下。啊！
7. Please don't sit down. Please stand up. Yes, Mrs. Li.	7. 请不要坐下。请站起来。 好的，李夫人。

考点突破营

1. They arrive at the train station. 他们到达火车站。

解析： arrive（动词）到达；抵达。常用短语：arrive at/in + 地点名词

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

例句： They will arrive in Beijing at 3：00. 他们将在3点到达北京。

易错点提示 arrive 和 home，here，there 连用时，后面不加介词。

例句： We arrive home on Friday afternoon. 我们周五下午到家。

2. Walk，please. 请走着。

解析： 祈使句是用来表达命令、请求、劝告、禁止等的句子。其主语为第二人称 you，通常省略主语。可以在句首或句尾添加 please，使句子语气委婉。

基本结构：

肯定句式：动词原形 + 其他.

例句： Come in，please. 请进来。

否定句式：Don't + 动词原形 + 其他.

例句： Don't come in，please. 请不要进来。

魔法记忆法

祈使句，祈使句，请求、命令或建议；
主语you常省去，动词原形开头记；
否定形式要注意，句首要把don't加；
要讲客气用please，句首句尾没关系。

Lesson 2 What Are You Doing?

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. see 看见；明白（过去式为 *saw*）　2. look 看；瞧　3. draw 画　4. boy 男孩
5. girl 女孩　6. picture 图画；照片　7. now 现在　8. look at 看（某人或某物）
9. look out of 从……向外看　10. draw a picture 画画

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Jenny is looking out of the window on the train. 詹妮正在火车上向窗外看。
2. —What are you doing? 你正在做什么？—I am drawing a picture. 我正在画画。
3. Look! I see many trees. 看！我看见很多树。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. What do they see on the train?

原 文	译 文
Jenny is looking out of the window on the train.	詹妮正在火车上向窗外看。
1. Look! I see many tall trees!	1. 看！我看见了很多高树！
2. There's a red school! Some boys and girls are playing there.	2. 有一所红色的学校！一些男孩和女孩正在那里玩耍。
Danny is not looking out of the window. What is Danny looking at?	丹尼没有向窗外看。丹尼正在看什么？
3. Look! I see a banana! I see dumplings!	3. 看！我看见了一根香蕉！我看见饺子了！
4. Danny，please don't point. Sorry.	4. 丹尼，请不要指。对不起。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. What are you doing?

原 文	译 文
Li Ming: Jenny, what are you doing now?	李明：詹妮，你现在正在做什么？
Jenny: I am drawing a picture. What are you doing?	詹妮：我正在画画。你正在做什么？
Li Ming: I'm reading a book.	李明：我正在看书。
Jenny: Danny is singing a song to your mother.	詹妮：丹尼正在给你的妈妈唱歌。
Mrs. Li: Danny, please don't sing!	李夫人：丹尼，请不要唱歌了！
Danny: I like bananas...	丹尼：我喜欢香蕉……

考点突破营

1. Jenny is looking out of the window on the train. 詹妮正在火车上向窗外看。

解析：这是一个现在进行时的句子。现在进行时表示现在或当前一段时间内正在进行的动作。句型结构为：主语 + be 动词（am，is，are）+ 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他. be 动词的形式要和主语的人称和数保持一致。

例句：They are flying kites. 他们正在放风筝。

2. —What are you doing? 你正在做什么？—I am drawing a picture. 我正在画画。

解析：问句是由 what 引导的现在进行时的特殊疑问句，用来询问对方正在做什么。其答语通常为：I am + 动词的-ing 形式 + 其他. 我正在做……

例句：—What are you doing? 你正在做什么？—I am playing games. 我正在玩游戏。

Lesson 3 Who Is Singing?

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. woman 女人　2. baby 婴儿　3. man 男人　4. cry 哭；哭泣；喊叫
5. talk 交谈；讨论　6. sleep 睡觉；入睡　7. behind me 在我后面　8. talk to 和……交谈

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Are you singing, Jenny? 你正在唱歌吗，詹妮？　2. Who is talking? 谁正在交谈？
3. The woman behind me is singing. 我后面的女人正在唱歌。

课文朗读

翻译达人秀

1. Is Jenny singing?

原 文	译 文
Li Ming: Is Jenny singing?	李明：詹妮在唱歌吗？
"Are you singing, Jenny?" I ask.	"你在唱歌吗，詹妮？"我问。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
"No, I'm not. The woman behind me is singing," says Jenny.	"不，我没在唱歌。我后面的女人正在唱歌。"詹妮说。
"The baby is crying," I say.	"婴儿正在哭。"我说。
"Yes," says Jenny. "The baby is tired."	"是的。"詹妮说，"这个婴儿累了。"
"Who is talking?" I ask.	"谁正在交谈?"我问。
"Danny is talking," says Jenny. "He is talking to the man behind you."	"丹尼正在交谈。"詹妮说，"他正在和你后面的男人交谈。"
"Now the baby isn't crying," I say.	"现在这个婴儿不哭了。"我说。
"Yes," says Jenny. "The baby is sleeping now."	"是的。"詹妮说，"这个婴儿现在正在睡觉。"

考点突破营

1. Are you singing, Jenny? 你正在唱歌吗，詹妮?
   解析：这是现在进行时的一般疑问句，结构为：Be 动词 + 主语 + *v*-ing...?
   肯定回答：Yes，主语 + be.　否定回答：No，主语 + be not.
   例句：—Is Danny reading a book? 丹尼正在读书吗?
   — Yes, he is. / No, he isn't. 是的，他正在读书。/不，他没有读书。
2. Who is talking? 谁正在交谈?
   解析：这是现在进行时的特殊疑问句，用来询问谁正在做某事。
   句型结构：Who + be 动词 + 动词的-ing 形式? 其中，who 意为"谁"，在句中常作主语。
   例句：Who is running on the playground? 谁正在操场上跑步?
3. The woman behind me is singing. 我后面的女人正在唱歌。
   解析：本句中 behind 是介词，故后跟人称代词的宾格形式 me，构成介词短语作后置定语。
   例句：The girl behind me is drawing a picture. 我后面的女孩正在画画。

Lesson 4 Who Is Hungry?

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. water 水　2. tea 茶　3. candy 糖果　4. hungry 饥饿的　5. who 谁　6. would like 想要

图示记忆法：



water *n.* 水　water *v.* 给……浇水

拓展词汇

表示饮料的词语：

orange/apple/lemon...juice橙子/苹果/柠檬……汁　milk牛奶
green/black tea绿/红茶　coffee咖啡　wine葡萄酒　beer啤酒

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Would you like some fruit? 你想要一些水果吗?
2. I'd like some tea, please. 我想要一些茶。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Who is hungry?

原 文	译 文
1. Who is hungry? I'm hungry! 2. Would you like some fruit? Yes, please. I'd like an apple and an orange, Mrs. Li. 3. Would you like some fruit, Li Ming? No, thanks, Mum. I'm thirsty. 4. Would you like some water? No, thanks. I'd like some tea, please. 5. I'm not hungry, and I'm not thirsty, Mrs. Li. But I'd like some candy. I like candy very much! Me, too. Okay. Here you are!	1. 谁饿了？ 我饿了！ 2. 你想要一些水果吗？ 好的。我想要一个苹果和一个橙子，李夫人。 3. 你想要一些水果吗，李明？ 不，谢谢，妈妈。我渴了。 4. 你想要一些水吗？ 不，谢谢。我想要一些茶。 5. 我不饿也不渴，李夫人。但是我想要一些糖果。我非常喜欢糖果！ 我也是。 好的。给你们！

考点突破营

1. Would you like some fruit? 你想要一些水果吗？

解析：这是询问对方是否想要某物的句型，其句型结构为：Would + 主语 + like + 某物？肯定回答：Yes, please. 否定回答：No, thanks.

其中，would like 意为“想要，愿意”相当于 want，但是比 want 语气委婉。

例句：—Would you like some apples? 你想要一些苹果吗？—Yes, please. 好的。

—Would you like some juice? 你想要些果汁吗？—No, thanks. 不，谢谢。

2. I'd like some tea, please. 我想要一些茶。

解析：I'd like...表示“我想要……”，可以用来回答“What would you like?”。其中，I'd 是 I would 的缩写形式。

例句：—What would you like? 你想要什么？—I'd like a banana. 我想要一根香蕉。

Lesson 5 What Are They Doing?

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. read the newspaper 读报纸
2. have fun 玩得开心
3. play with...和……玩
4. play cards 玩纸牌

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What are they doing? 他们正在做什么？
2. May I play with the baby, too? 我也可以和这个婴儿玩吗？

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. People on the train

原 文	译 文
Li Ming: What is the baby doing now, Jenny?	李明：那个婴儿现在正在做什么，詹妮？
Jenny: I don't know. I can't see the baby.	詹妮：我不知道。我看不见那个婴儿。
Li Ming: What is the woman doing now?	李明：那个女人现在正在做什么？
Jenny: She's reading the newspaper. Who is playing?	詹妮：她正在读报纸。谁正在玩？
Li Ming: The man behind me is playing cards with his friends. They're having fun.	李明：我后面的男人正在和他的朋友们玩纸牌。他们玩得很开心。
Jenny: Where is Danny?	詹妮：丹尼在哪啊？
Li Ming: I don't know.	李明：我不知道。
Jenny: Danny? Danny? Oh, no! I can't find Danny! DANNY!	詹妮：丹尼？丹尼？哦，不！我找不到丹尼了！丹尼！
Danny: Jenny!	丹尼：詹妮！
Jenny: Oh! There you are.	詹妮：哦！你在那里。
Danny: I'm playing with the baby.	丹尼：我正在和这个婴儿玩。
Jenny: May I play with the baby, too?	詹妮：我也可以和这个婴儿玩吗？
Danny: Sure!	丹尼：当然可以！

考点突破营

1. 现在进行时的句型结构总结：

	句型结构	例句
肯定句	主语 + be（am，is，are）+ 动词的现在分词（*v.* -ing）+ 其他.	She is reading a book now.
否定句	主语 + be（am，is，are）+ not + 动词的现在分词（*v.* -ing）+ 其他.	She is not reading a book now.
一般疑问句	Be（am，is，are）+ 主语 + 动词的现在分词（*v.* -ing）+ 其他？ 肯定回答：Yes，主语 + be. 否定回答：No，主语 + be not.	Is she reading a book? Yes, she is. No, she isn't.
特殊疑问句	特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句？	What is she doing?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

拓展：动词现在分词的变化规则

规则	例词
1. 一般情况下，在动词原形末尾加-ing	go-going read-reading draw-drawing
2. 以不发音的字母-e 结尾的动词，先去掉 e 再加-ing	make-making come-coming have-having drive-driving
3. 以重读闭音节结尾的动词，且词尾只有一个辅音字母，应双写这个辅音字母，再加-ing	sit-sitting run-running put-putting swim-swimming

2. May I play with the baby, too? 我也可以和这个婴儿玩吗？

解析：May I …? 意为“我可以……?”用来表示说话人请求对方的许可。答语如果是肯定的，用 Yes. /Sure. 等。如果答语为否定的，一般不直接说 No，而说 Sorry，but…/I'm afraid…

例句：—May I use your pen? 我能用你的钢笔吗？

—Sure. Here you are. 当然可以。给你。

Lesson 6 Danny Is Lost!

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Jenny, Danny, Li Ming and Mrs. Li are going on a trip to Beijing. Mr. Li drives them to the train station.	1. 詹妮、丹尼、李明和李夫人要去北京旅行。李先生开车送他们去火车站。
2. Li Ming gets the tickets.	2. 李明拿到票。
3. Then they go to the train. They stand beside the train. Mr. Li says good-bye to them. “Danny? Oh, no! Where's Danny?” says Jenny. “I can't find Danny! Danny is lost!” Mr. Li says, “Don't worry, Jenny. I can find Danny.” Good-bye!	3. 然后他们走向火车。他们站在火车旁边。 李先生对他们说再见。 “丹尼？哦，不！丹尼在哪里？”詹妮说，“我找不到丹尼！丹尼走丢了！” 李先生说：“不要担心，詹妮。我能找到丹尼。” 再见！
4. Mr. Li looks for Danny at the train station. “Danny! Danny! Where are you, Danny?” he calls. There is Danny! He is buying fruit! How much is this? Four yuan.	4. 李先生在火车站找丹尼。 “丹尼！丹尼！丹尼，你在哪里？”他喊道。 丹尼在那儿！他正在买水果！ 这个多少钱？ 四元。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
5. Mr. Li says, "Danny! There you are!" "Hi, Mr. Li!" says Danny. "Do you like these bananas or those bananas?" How much is that?	5. 李先生说："丹尼！原来你在这儿！" "嗨，李先生！"丹尼说，"你喜欢这些香蕉还是那些香蕉？" 那个多少钱？
6. "Danny! Don't buy the bananas!" says Mr. Li. "The train is leaving!" Don't forget your coat!	6. "丹尼！不要买香蕉了！"李先生说，"火车要开了！" 不要忘记你的外套！
7. Danny runs to the train. Danny! Don't run!	7. 丹尼跑向火车。 丹尼！不要跑！
8. Danny jumps on the train. Jenny says, "There you are, Danny!" Mr. Li says, "Have a good trip!" "We'll miss you!" says Li Ming. "I'm hungry!" says Danny. Good-bye! Good-bye! Have a good trip!	8. 丹尼跳上火车。 詹妮说："原来你在这儿，丹尼！" 李先生说："旅行愉快！" "我们会想念你的！"李明说。 "我饿了！"丹尼说。 再见！ 再见！旅行愉快！

我是小作家

如何用现在进行时描写一处场景

一、思维步骤：

1. 总体介绍场景发生的时间、地点；
2. 分别介绍场景中不同人物的活动。

二、词句储备：

必备短语：draw a picture 画画　sing a song 唱歌　read a book 看书
fly a kite 放风筝　look out of the window 向窗外看　talk with…和……交谈

必备句型：主语＋be（am/is/are）＋动词的-ing 形式＋其他．某人正在做……

三、经典范文：

It's 4：30 in the afternoon. Class is over. My classmates are happy. Look! Peter is playing football with some boys on the playground. Lily is dancing with her teacher. Sarah is drawing a picture near her desk. Jenny is reading a book. There are some girls. They are talking with their teacher.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 In Beijing

Lesson 7 Arriving in Beijing

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. people 人们　　2. many 许多的；许多　　3. child 孩子（复数形式为 *children*）
4. women 女人（*woman* 的复数形式）　　5. men 男人（*man* 的复数形式）
6. on one's way to 在某人去……的路上　　7. play football 踢足球
8. do Tai Chi 打太极

类比记忆法：

男人：man（单数）→men（复数）
男警察：policeman（单数）→policemen（复数）
女人：woman（单数）→women（复数）
女警察：policewoman（单数）→policewomen（复数）

二、我要掌握的句型

1. They are on their way to the hotel. 他们在去旅馆的路上。
2. There are many people in the park. 公园里有很多人。
3. Some children are playing football. 一些孩子在踢足球。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. People in Beijing

原文	译文
Li Ming, Danny, Jenny and Mrs. Li arrive in Beijing at 1: 17 in the afternoon. They are on their way to the hotel.	李明、丹尼、詹妮和李夫人在下午 1:17 到达北京。他们在去旅馆的路上。
Look! There are many people in the park.	看！公园里有许多人。
Beijing is great!	北京太棒了！
A child is flying a kite. Some children are playing football.	一个孩子在放风筝。一些孩子在踢足球。
A young woman is singing. Some old women are dancing.	一个年轻的女人在唱歌。一些年老的女人在跳舞。
A man is running. Some old men are doing Tai Chi.	一个男人在跑步。一些老人在打太极。

考点突破营

1. They are on their way to the hotel. 他们在去旅馆的路上。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

解析：“on one's way to + 地点”表示“在某人去……的路上”，one's 与主语保持人称和数的一致。

例句：Tom is on his way to school. 汤姆正在去学校的路上。

2. There are many people in the park. 公园里有许多人。

解析：此句型是 There be 句型，用来表达“某处有某人/某物”。

基本结构为：There is/are + 名词 + 地点短语. 在此结构中，be 动词的单复数要与后面的名词一致，当有多个名词并列时，要与第一个名词的单复数一致。

例句：1. There are many students on the playground. 操场上有很多学生。

2. There is a book, some pencils and one pen on the desk.
桌子上有一本书，一些铅笔和一支钢笔。

3. Some children are playing football. 一些孩子在踢足球。

解析：children 是 child 的复数形式。下面是可数名词变复数的规则。

情况	变化规则	例词
一般情况	在词尾加-s	book→books 书
以-s，-x，-ch，-sh 结尾的单词	在词尾加-es	class→classes 班级
以辅音字母加-y 结尾的单词	先变 y 为 i，再加-es	baby→babies 婴儿
以元音字母加-y 结尾的单词	在词尾加-s	boy→boys 男孩
以-f 或-fe 结尾的单词	把 f 或 fe 变为 v，再加-es	leaf→leaves 树叶

（1）有些名词的复数形式是不规则的，需特殊记忆：

foot→feet（脚）　tooth→teeth（牙齿）　child→children（孩子）

（2）还有一些名词的单复数同形：

sheep→sheep（羊）　Chinese→Chinese（中国人）　deer→deer（鹿）

（3）以-o 结尾，加-es 的单词：

potato→potatoes（土豆）　tomato→tomatoes（西红柿）　hero→heroes（英雄）

Lesson 8 Tian'anmen Square

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. say 说　2. help 救命；帮助　3. worry 担心；担忧　4. sad 悲伤的
5. Tian'anmen Square 天安门广场　6. take pictures 拍照　7. fly a kite 放风筝

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Don't worry. 别担心。
2. I can help you. 我可以帮助你。
3. There are many children. 有很多孩子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

翻译达人秀


课文朗读

1. On the square

原 文	译 文
Tian'anmen Square is very big! There are many people here! Some people are taking pictures on the square. There are many children. They are playing.	天安门广场非常大！这里有很多人！一些人正在广场上照相。有很多孩子。他们正在玩。
"Some men are flying kites!" says Danny. "Let's fly a kite." "This is easy," says Jenny.	"一些男人正在放风筝！"丹尼说，"让我们放风筝吧。""这很容易。"詹妮说。
"Oh, no! This is difficult!"	"哦，不！这很难！"
"Help! Help!"	"救命啊！救命啊！"
"Poor Danny! Are you okay?" asks Jenny.	"可怜的丹尼！你还好吗？"詹妮问。
"No! I hurt my arm!" answers Danny.	"不好！我伤到我的胳膊了！"丹尼回答。
"Don't worry. I can help you," says Jenny.	"别担心。我可以帮助你。"詹妮说。
"Thanks," Danny says.	"谢谢你。"丹尼说。
Jenny can fly her kite very high. Danny can't fly a kite. He hurts his arm. He is sad.	詹妮能把她的风筝放得很高。丹尼不会放风筝。他伤到了他的胳膊。他很伤心。

考点突破营

Don't worry. I can help you. 别担心。我可以帮助你。

解析："Don't worry." 常用于安慰对方，意为"别害怕；别着急；不用担心"。help 为动词，表示"帮助"。

例句：Don't worry. He can do it well. 别担心，他会做好的。

Lesson 9 The Palace Museum


扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. take 乘坐；买下；拍照
2. be 是；存在（*am*，*is*，*are* 等的原形动词）
3. take a picture 拍照
4. look in…向……里看

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Be careful! 小心！
2. —How old is the Palace Museum? 故宫有多久的历史？
   —It's about six hundred years old. 大约有 600 年的历史了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. At the Palace Museum

原 文	译 文
It's sunny today. The sky is blue. Danny, Jenny and Li Ming are visiting the Palace Museum. The Palace is red and yellow. It's beautiful!	今天阳光明媚。天空很蓝。丹尼、詹妮和李明正在参观故宫。宫殿是红色和黄色的。非常漂亮！
Jenny: How old is the Palace Museum, Li Ming?	**詹妮：**故宫有多久的历史了，李明？
Li Ming: It's about six hundred years old.	**李明：**大约有600年的历史了。
Jenny: That's old!	**詹妮：**那很古老！
Danny: Let's look in the window!	**丹尼：**让我们向窗户里看看！
Li Ming: What do you see?	**李明：**你看到什么了？
Jenny: I see some chairs and tables. They are old.	**詹妮：**我看到一些椅子和桌子。它们很古老。
Danny: May I take your picture, Jenny?	**丹尼：**我可以给你拍照吗，詹妮？
Jenny: Sure.	**詹妮：**当然可以。
Danny: And your picture, too, Li Ming. Please stand beside Jenny.	**丹尼：**还有你的照片，李明。请站在詹妮旁边。
"Okay! Say cheese!"	"好了！说茄子！"
"Danny! Be careful!"	"丹尼！小心！"
"Help! I'm falling!"	"救命！我要跌倒了！"
"Ouch!"	"哎哟！"
Danny falls! He hurts his tail! Poor Danny!	丹尼摔倒了！他伤了他的尾巴！可怜的丹尼！

考点突破营

1. Be careful! 小心！

解析：这是一个祈使句。be为am，is，are的原形动词，后接形容词。

例句：Be quiet, please! 请安静！

2. —How old is the Palace Museum? 故宫有多久的历史？

—It's about six hundred years old. 大约有600年的历史了。

解析：How old可以用来询问某人的年龄，或某物的历史。

例句：—How old is the building? 这个建筑物有多久的历史了？

—It's about 15 years old. 大约15年了。

易错点提示 hundred前面有具体的数词修饰时，不能加-s。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Lesson 10 The Great Wall

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. feel 觉得；感到　2. stop 停下，停止；（公共汽车、火车）站　3. wait 等待
4. tired 疲劳的；累的　5. afraid 害怕，畏惧　6. far from…离……很远
7. take a bus 乘坐公共汽车　8. run to 跑向……　9. too many 太多

拓展词汇：

表达情绪的词汇：happy 高兴的　excited 兴奋的　sad 伤心的　afraid 害怕的
surprised 惊讶的　bored 烦闷的　angry 生气的

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —How long is it? 它多长？—About 6000 kilometres. 大约 6000 千米。
2. Don't be afraid. 别害怕。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. On the Great Wall

原 文	译 文
The Great Wall is far from our hotel. We need to take a bus.	长城离我们的旅馆很远。我们需要坐公共汽车。
Jenny: How old is the Great Wall, Li Ming?	詹妮：长城有多久的历史，李明？
Li Ming: It's about 2000 years old.	李明：大约 2000 年的历史了。
Jenny: That's very old.	詹妮：那很古老了。
Danny: How long is it?	丹尼：它多长？
Li Ming: About 6000 kilometres.	李明：大约 6000 千米。
Danny: That's great!	丹尼：那太雄伟了！
Oh, my cap!	哦，我的帽子！

2. On the way back

原 文	译 文
On the way back to the hotel, Danny feels tired and hungry. He sees a restaurant. He runs to the restaurant.	在回旅馆的路上，丹尼感到又累又饿。他看到一家餐馆。他跑向这家餐馆。
No, Danny! Stop! Don't go! There are too many cars and buses. Please wait. Be careful.	不，丹尼！停下！别跑！有太多的小汽车和公交车。请等等。小心。
I'm hungry!	我饿了！
Help! Help!	救命！救命！
Don't be afraid. I can help you!	别害怕。我可以帮助你！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. —How long is it? 它多长？　—About 6000 kilometres. 大约 6000 千米。
   解析： How long 用于询问某物的长度。
   句型结构为：—How long ＋be＋名词？　—名词＋be＋数词＋长度单位（＋long）.
   例句： —How long is the snake? 这条蛇多长？　—It's about 4 metres long. 大约 4 米长。
2. Don't be afraid. 别害怕。
   解析： 此句为祈使句的否定句。be 为 am，is，are 的原形动词。
   句型结构为：Don't be＋形容词.　**例句：** Don't be nervous. 别紧张。

Lesson 11 Shopping in Beijing

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. busy 忙碌的
2. for 为……；给……
3. love shopping 喜欢购物
4. look in 向……里面看

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Jenny buys a scarf for her mother. 詹妮给她的妈妈买了一条围巾。
2. —What time is it? 几点了？—It's 2：30. 两点三十。

拓展： 询问时间的另一种表达是：What's the time? 几点了？

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. On Wangfujing Street

原 文	译 文
Danny, Jenny, Li Ming and Mrs. Li are shopping on Wangfujing Street. Danny's tail hurts, but he loves shopping.	丹尼、詹妮、李明和李夫人正在王府井大街购物。丹尼的尾巴受伤了，但是他喜欢购物。
Jenny buys a scarf for her mother, some tea for her father, a kite for her sister and a cap for her brother.	詹妮给她的妈妈买了一条围巾，给她的爸爸买了一些茶，给她的妹妹买了一只风筝，给她的哥哥买了一顶帽子。
Danny is so busy. He looks in fifteen shops. Mrs. Li, Li Ming and Jenny sit down.	丹尼特别忙。他逛了 15 家店。李夫人、李明和詹妮坐下了。
1. What time is it, Li Ming? It's 2：30.	1. 几点了，李明？ 两点三十。
2. What time is it now? It's 3：00.	2. 现在几点了？ 三点。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
Here's Danny! What does he have? It's a big panda!	丹尼在这里！他拿着什么？它是一只大熊猫！
3. Danny! You can't walk to the hotel with that! Yes, I know. My tail hurts.	3. 丹尼！你带着那个走不到宾馆！ 是的，我知道。我的尾巴受伤了。
4. But you don't have a tail, Mrs. Li. You can walk with it! You are so kind.	4. 但是你没有尾巴，李夫人。你能带着它走！你那么好。

考点突破营

1. Jenny buys a scarf for her mother. 詹妮给她的妈妈买了一条围巾。
解析：给某人买某物的句型结构为：buy ＋某物＋for＋某人＝buy＋某人＋某物
例句：I buy a birthday cake for my cousin. 我给我表妹买了一个生日蛋糕。
＝I buy my cousin a birthday cake.
2. —What time is it? 几点了？—It's 2：30. 两点半。
解析："What time is it?" 是询问时间点的句型，同义句是 "What's the time?"。
答语为：It's ＋时间点.
例句：—What time is it now? 现在几点了？—It's 2 o'clock. 两点了。

Lesson 12 A Visit to the Great Wall

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Today, Mrs. Li, Jenny, Danny and Li Ming are going to the Great Wall by bus.	1. 今天，李夫人、詹妮、丹尼和李明打算乘坐公共汽车去长城。
2. "In China, we call the Great Wall 'The Ten-Thousand-Li Great Wall'," says Li Ming. Wow, it is so long!	2. "在中国，我们称长城为'万里长城'。"李明说。 哇，它真长！
3. "The Great Wall is very old and very long. The oldest part is more than 2000 years old," Li Ming goes on. Danny and Jenny want to know more about the Great Wall.	3. "长城很古老并且很长。最古老的部分超过2000年。"李明继续说道。 丹尼和詹妮想知道更多关于长城的事情。
4. Do you know more interesting things about it? "Well, in China, people say 'He who does not go to the Great Wall is not a true man'," says Li Ming.	4. 你知道更多关于它的有趣的事情吗？ "对了，在中国，人们说'不到长城非好汉'。"李明说。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

原 文	译 文
5. “Great! So now I am a true man! Let me write my name on the Great Wall,” says Danny. “No, Danny! Don’t draw or write on the Great Wall! Let’s keep it clean and beautiful,” says Li Ming. Okay, Li Ming. Sorry. 6. “What a wonderful place to visit!” says Jenny. “We are lucky to see it.”	5. “太棒了！那么现在我是一个好汉！让我把我的名字写在长城上。”丹尼说。 “不，丹尼！不要在长城上写和画！让我们保持它的干净和美丽。”李明说。 好的，李明。对不起。 6. “真是一个值得参观的绝妙的地方啊！”詹妮说，“我们很幸运看到它。”

我是小作家

三步法描述一次旅行

一、思维步骤：

1. 总体介绍旅行的时间（when）、人物（who）和目的地（where），这几点是描述旅行的关键点。
2. 详细描述你在旅行中的所见所闻，以及你自己参与的活动。
3. 确定好时态。因描述的是正在发生的事，故用现在进行时。
4. 总结心情，抒发感想。

二、词句储备：

必备词汇：children 孩子们　woman 女人　man 男人　boy 男孩　girl 女孩
take a picture 照相　walk 散步　do Tai Chi 打太极　play football 踢足球

必备句型：There be…有……　Sb. is/are doing…某人正在做……

三、经典范文：

It’s summer holiday. I go on a trip with my family to Sanya. We come to the beach. The sky and the sea are blue. There are many people on the beach. Some children are swimming in the sea with their parents. Two girls are playing with the sand on the beach. Some women are sitting under trees. They are talking. I am taking a boat with my mum. My dad is taking our pictures. We all feel happy.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Writing Home

Lesson 13 Let's Buy Postcards!

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. email 电子邮件　　2. write an email 写电子邮件　　3. on paper 在纸上

二、我要掌握的句型

1. This postcard has a picture of the Palace Museum! 这张明信片上有故宫的图片!
2. May I see that postcard, please? 请问我可以看看那张明信片吗?
3. How much is this postcard? 这张明信片多少钱?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Postcard, letter and email

原 文	译 文
These are postcards.	这些是明信片。
A postcard has a picture on it.	明信片上有图画。
This is a letter.	这是一封信。
We write a letter on paper.	我们在纸上写信。
This is an email.	这是一封电子邮件。
We write an email on a computer.	我们在电脑上写电子邮件。

2. In the shop

原 文	译 文
Jenny, Danny and Li Ming want to buy some postcards. They are in the shop.	詹妮、丹尼和李明想要买一些明信片。他们在商店里。
1. This postcard has a picture of the Palace Museum! This postcard has the Great Wall.	1. 这张明信片上有故宫的图片! 这张明信片上有长城。
2. I want to send this postcard to my mum and dad.	2. 我想要把这张明信片寄给我的妈妈和爸爸。
3. May I see that postcard, please? Sure!	3. 请问我可以看看那张明信片吗? 当然可以了!
4. How much is this postcard? It's two yuan. I'll take nine, please.	4. 这张明信片多少钱? 2 元。 我要买 9 张。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. This postcard has a picture of the Palace Museum！这张明信片上有故宫的图片！

解析：这是一个描述某物上有某个图片的句型。a picture of…意为“一幅……的图片”。

句型结构：某物 A + has a picture of + 某物 B.

例句：This postcard has a picture of flowers. 这张明信片上有花的图片。

2. May I see that postcard, please? 请问我可以看看那张明信片吗？

句型结构：May I + 动词原形（+其他），please? 请问我可以……吗？用于礼貌地提出请求。

肯定回答为：Sure. /Certainly. /Of course.

否定回答为：Sorry. /Certainly not. /No, I'm afraid not.

例句：—May I look at your new book, please? 请问我可以看看你的新书吗？

—Sure. Here you are. 当然。给你。

3. How much is this postcard? 这张明信片多少钱？

句型结构：How much is/are + 物品？此问句用来询问价格。在此句型中，How much 意为“多少钱”。答语句型结构为：It's/ They're + 基数词 + 货币单位.

例句：—How much are these books? 这些书多少钱？—Thirteen yuan. 十三元。

易错点提示 当物品是不可数名词或可数名词单数时，be 动词用 is；当物品是可数名词复数时，be 动词用 are。

Lesson 14 Jenny Writes a Postcard

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. mum 妈妈（非正式用语）　2. dad 爸爸（非正式用语）　3. fine 健康的；晴朗的

4. right 右边　5. left 左边　6. write 写　7. dear 亲爱的　8. a picture of………的图片

9. have fun 玩得开心　10. on the left/right 在左边/右边　11. send…to…把……寄给……

同音异形词记忆法：

right /raɪt/（右边）和 write /raɪt/（写）发音相同，但是拼写和意思不同。

类似的还有：/weə（r)/ wear（穿）和 where（哪儿）　/baɪ/ by（通过）和 buy（买）

二、我要掌握的句型

1. I want to send this postcard to my mum and dad. 我想把这张明信片寄给我妈妈和爸爸。

2. —Where do you write on a postcard? 你在明信片哪里写内容？—On the left. 在左边。

3. —Where do you put the address? 你把地址写在哪里？—On the right. 在右边。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Let's write a postcard.

原文	译文
I want to send this postcard to my mum and dad. It has a picture of the Palace Museum.	我想把这张明信片寄给我妈妈和爸爸。 它上面有一幅故宫博物院的图画。
Friday, February 7 Dear Mum and Dad, How are you? I am fine. We are having fun in Beijing. This is the Palace Museum. It is not far from Tian'anmen Square. Tian'anmen Square is very big. I miss you. Love, Jenny Mr. and Mrs. Smith 522 Park Road Edmonton, T6G2R3 Alberta, Canada	星期五，二月七日 亲爱的妈妈和爸爸： 你们好吗？我很好。我们在北京玩得很开心。这是故宫博物院。它距离天安门广场不远。天安门广场很大。 我想念你们。 爱你们的， 詹妮 加拿大阿尔伯塔省 T6G2R3 埃德蒙顿市 公园路 522 号 史密斯先生和史密斯太太（收）
Where do you write on a postcard? On the left. Where do you put the address? On the right. Write the date first. Don't forget the stamp.	你在明信片哪里写内容？在左边。 你把地址写在哪里？在右边。 先写上日期。不要忘记（贴）邮票。

考点突破营

1. I want to send this postcard to my mum and dad. 我想把这张明信片寄给我妈妈和爸爸。
解析： I want to + 动词（短语）原形 + 其他．表示我想要做某事。want 意为“想要”；to 后接动词（短语）原形。
例句： I want to buy some fruit. 我想买一些水果。
2. —Where do you write on a postcard? 你在明信片哪里写内容？—On the left. 在左边。
—Where do you put the address? 你把地址写在哪里？—On the right. 在右边。
解析： 这两句是关于明信片格式的问答。一般我们在明信片的左边写内容，右边写收明信片人的地址。

扫码听读

Lesson 15 Sending the Postcards

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. turn 转向；转弯
2. send the postcards 寄明信片
3. post office 邮局
4. turn left 左转
5. traffic lights 交通信号灯

加法记忆法

post（寄）+card（卡片）=
postcard（明信片）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Excuse me，where's the post office? 劳驾，邮局在哪里?
2. Do you need stamps，Danny? 你需要邮票吗，丹尼?
3. I'll take them，please. 我将要买它们。

拓展

询问地点的另一种表达：How to get to+地点？怎样去……？

课文朗读

翻译达人秀

1. Where's the post office?

原 文	译 文
Danny and Jenny want to send the postcards. Where is the post office? 1. Excuse me，where's the post office? 2. Go straight. Turn left at the traffic lights. Thanks!	丹尼和詹妮想要寄明信片。 邮局在哪里? 1. 劳驾，邮局在哪里? 2. 直走。在交通信号灯处向左转。 谢谢!

2. At the post office

原 文	译 文
1. I need stamps for two postcards to Canada. How much are they? 2. They are twenty yuan. I'll take them，please. 3. Do you need stamps，Danny? Yes，but not now! 4. What are you doing? I'm writing nine postcards to my mother. 5. Nine?! Yes! Look! Oh，no! Danny，you are wrong. Oops!	1. 我需要邮票来向加拿大寄两张明信片。 它们要多少钱? 2. 它们要二十元。 我将要买它们。 3. 你需要邮票吗，丹尼? 是的，但不是现在! 4. 你正在做什么? 我正在给我的妈妈写九张明信片。 5. 九张?! 是的!（你）看! 哦，不! 丹尼，你错了。 哎哟!

考点突破营

1. Excuse me，where's the post office? 劳驾，邮局在哪里?

句型结构： Where's + 地点名词? 用于询问地点。where 是疑问词，意为“在哪里”。通常在句首加 Excuse me 或者句尾加 please 会显得更有礼貌。

例句： Excuse me，where's Tian'anmen Square? 劳驾，天安门广场在哪里?

2. Do you need stamps，Danny? 你需要邮票吗，丹尼?

句型结构： Do you need + 某物（+其他）? 用于询问对方是否需要某物。

例句： Do you need water? 你需要水吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. I'll take them, please. 我将要买它们。
解析：这是一个一般将来时的句子，用于表达自己将要买某物。
句型结构：I'll take + 某物，please. 在此句型中，I'll 是 I will 的缩写形式，take 意为“买”。
例句：I'll take three, please. 我将要买三个。

Lesson 16 An Email Is Fast

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. idea 想法；主意　　2. computer 电脑　　3. use 使用；利用
4. send an email 发送电子邮件　　5. go back home 回家

易错点提示 email 是以元音音素开头的单词，其单数形式前的冠词用 an。

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Let's send an email. 让我们发电子邮件吧。
2. Can we use the computer? 我们能使用这台电脑吗?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Send an email

原 文	译 文
1. A postcard is slow. An email is fast. And it doesn't need stamps. Let's send an email.	1. 明信片（寄起来）很慢。电子邮件很快。而且它不需要邮票。让我们发电子邮件吧。
2. Good idea! I want to send an email to my father. I want to send an email to Steven!	2. 好主意！我想给我的爸爸发一封电子邮件。 我想给斯蒂芬发一封电子邮件！
3. There is a computer in the room.	3. 房间里有一台电脑。
4. Can we use the computer? Sure.	4. 我们能使用这台电脑吗? 当然可以。
To: lidaming@163.com From: liming@hotmail.com Subject: How are you? Dear Dad, How are you? I'm fine. Beijing is a very big city. It's beautiful! Mum and I will go back home tomorrow. See you soon. Love, Li Ming	收件人：lidaming@163.com 发件人：liming@hotmail.com 主题：你好吗? 亲爱的爸爸： 你好吗？我很好。北京是一个很大的城市。它很美丽！我和妈妈明天将回家。 希望尽快见到你。 爱你的， 李明

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. Let's send an email. 让我们发电子邮件吧。

句型结构： Let's ＋动词原形＋其他. 让我们……吧。用于提出某建议或请求对方和自己一起做某事。Let's 是 Let us 的缩写形式。

肯定回答：OK！/ All right！/ That sounds good. 否定回答：Sorry，I…

例句： —Let's play basketball. 让我们打篮球吧。—OK！好的！

2. Can we use the computer? 我们能使用这台电脑吗？

解析： 此句型是由 can 开头的一般疑问句，用于征求对方的意见。can 是情态动词，在一般疑问句中应放在主语前面，其后的实义动词用原形。

句型结构： Can＋主语＋动词原形＋其他？回答：Sure. /Yes，主语＋can. 或 No，主语＋can't.

例句： —Can you play with me? 你能和我玩吗？—Sure. 当然。

Lesson 17 Danny's Email

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. kind 友好的；体贴的　　2. snowy 多雪的　　3. us 我们（*we* 的宾格形式）
4. write an email to… 给……写一封电子邮件

二、我要掌握的句型

1. How's the weather in Canada? 加拿大的天气怎么样？　　2. Is it snowy? 下雪了吗？
3. There is no snow. 没有雪。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Danny writes an email.

原 文	译 文
I'm writing an email to Steven. **To**：steven@ supermail. com **From**：danny@ compmail. ca **Subject**：Hello! Dear Steven, I'm in Beijing. How's the weather in Canada? Is it snowy? In Beijing, it is sunny. There is no snow. People here are kind. What a great trip! I'm coming home to Canada on February 8. Your friend, Danny	我正在给斯蒂芬写一封电子邮件。 **收件人**：steven@ supermail. com **发件人**：danny@ compmail. ca **主题**：你好！ 亲爱的斯蒂芬： 我在北京。加拿大的天气怎么样？下雪了吗？ 在北京，天气晴朗。没有雪。这里的人们很友善。多么棒的旅行啊！我将在二月八日回加拿大。 你的朋友， 丹尼

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. Time to go home

原 文	译 文
What a fun trip! Beijing is great! Tomorrow you'll go back to Canada. We'll miss you. Thank you. We'll miss you, too. Don't forget to write to us.	多开心的旅行啊！北京棒极了！ 明天你们就要返回加拿大了。我们会想念你们的。 谢谢。我们也会想念你们的。 不要忘了给我们写信。

考点突破营

1. How's the weather in Canada? 加拿大的天气怎么样？
句型结构： How's the weather in + 某地？用于询问某地的天气情况。
同义句：What's the weather like in + 地点？答语：It's + 表示天气的形容词.
例句： —How's the weather in Baoding? 保定天气怎样？—It's sunny and hot. 又晴朗又热。
2. Is it snowy? 下雪了吗？
句型结构： Is it + 表示天气的形容词（+其他）？是一般疑问句，用于询问天气是否是……？答语根据实际情况，用“Yes, it is.”或“No, it isn't.”回答。
例句： —Is it warm in spring in Beijing? 北京的春天温暖吗？—Yes, it is. 是的，它是温暖的。
3. There is no snow. 没有雪。
句型结构： There be no + 名词（+其他）. 用于描述没有某物。no 意为“没有”，可以修饰可数名词和不可数名词。同义句：There be not a/ any…
例句： There is no rain. = There isn't any rain. 没有雨。

Lesson 18 Little Zeke Sends an Email

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Li Ming, Danny and Jenny are in Beijing. They are sending an email. 2. Jenny says, “Let's send an email to my friend Emma!” “Where does Emma live?” asks Danny. “She lives in Ottawa,” says Jenny. “I want to tell her about our trip.” Jenny writes to Emma. 3. *Dear Emma,* *I am sending you this email from Beijing. It is two o'clock in the afternoon here. It's one o'clock in the morning in Ottawa! How are you? We are having a great time.* *See you soon.* *Yours truly,*	1. 李明，丹尼和詹妮在北京。他们正在发电子邮件。 2. 詹妮说：“咱们给我的朋友埃玛发一封电子邮件吧！” “埃玛住在哪里？”丹尼问。 “她住在渥太华，”詹妮说。“我想告诉她我们的旅行。”詹妮给埃玛写电子邮件。 3. 亲爱的埃玛： 我正在北京给你发这封电子邮件。现在这里是下午两点钟。渥太华现在是凌晨一点！你好吗？我们玩得很开心。 希望尽快见到你。 你真诚的，

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

原文	译文
Jenny This is Jenny's email.	詹妮 这是詹妮的电子邮件。
4. "I also want to send an email to my brother," says Jenny. "I'm hungry. Let's go to the restaurant to have lunch!" says Danny. No, Danny, not now!	4. "我也想给我的哥哥发一封电子邮件。"詹妮说。"我饿了。咱们去饭店吃午饭吧!"丹尼说。 不，丹尼，不是现在！
5. Hey! Look! It's an email for us! Who is sending us an email? "I don't know. It's from Ottawa. It's from Emma!"says Jenny. "No way!" says Danny. "Isn't everyone in Ottawa sleeping now?"	5. 嘿！看！有一封给我们的邮件！ 谁会给我们发邮件呢？ "我不知道。它来自渥太华。它来自埃玛!"詹妮说。"不可能!"丹尼说。"难道渥太华所有的人现在不是睡觉吗?"
6. *Dear Jenny,* *Thank you for sending an email to Emma. She is fine. She is sleeping in her bed. Everyone is in bed sleeping. I don't have a bed. I sleep in a sock. It is Emma's sock. It is a gift from Emma.* *I am tired. I want to go to sock now.* *Yours truly,* *Little Zeke* This is the email from Little Zeke.	6. *亲爱的詹妮：* *谢谢你给埃玛发的电子邮件。她很好。她正在她的床上睡觉。大家都正在床上睡觉。我没有床。我在袜子里睡觉。它是埃玛的袜子。它是埃玛给我的礼物。* *我累了。现在我想去袜子里。* *你真诚的，* *小齐克* 这是一封来自小齐克的电子邮件。
7. "Go to sock?" says Danny. "Is that sentence wrong? Does he want to go to bed?" "Who is Little Zeke?" asks Li Ming. "I don't know!" says Jenny.	7. "去袜子里?"丹尼说。"那个句子是错的吗？他是想去睡觉吗?" "小齐克是谁?"李明问。 "我不知道!"詹妮说。

我是小作家

三步法写书信

一、思维步骤：

1. 写称呼。称呼通常都用 Dear…开头，且单独成一行。
2. 写正文。正文是书信的主体部分，用来表达此书信的主要目的。
3. 写落款。落款通常占两行。第一行为 Yours，Your friend 或 Yours truly 等；第二行是人名。

二、词句储备：

have fun 玩得开心　　go back to…回到……　　say hi to…向……问好
Thank you for…谢谢你……　　I hope…我希望……　　How are you? 你好吗?
See you soon. 希望尽快见到你。　　I'll be happy to see you again. 再次见到你我会很高兴。

三、经典范文：

Dear Mum,
Today is your birthday. Happy birthday to you! Thank you so much for everything you did for me. I'm in Beijing now. So I can't give you my best wishes face to face. I'll take care of myself. Please don't worry about me. I hope you can have fun.
With love,
Jenny

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Did You Have a Nice Trip?

Lesson 19 Li Ming Comes Home

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. story 故事　　2. night 夜晚，晚上　　3. did 做，干；助动词（*do* 的过去式）
4. yesterday 昨天　　5. often 时常；常常

二、我要掌握的句型

1. I missed you, too. 我也想你了。　　2. Did you have a nice trip? 你旅途愉快吗？
3. —What did you do yesterday? 你们昨天做了什么？
   —We walked to Wangfujing Street. 我们步行去了王府井大街。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Li Ming's story

原文	译文
Mr. Li: Hello, Li Ming! You are back. I missed you!	李先生：你好，李明！你回来了。我想你了！
Li Ming: I missed you, too.	李明：我也想你了。
Mr. Li: Did you have a nice trip?	李先生：你旅途愉快吗？
Li Ming: Yes! I had a great trip!	李明：是的！我旅途很愉快！
Mr. Li: What did you do yesterday?	李先生：你们昨天做了什么？
Li Ming: We walked to Wangfujing Street. We shopped there. I wanted to buy a gift for you. I looked in many shops. I liked this. Here, it's for you!	李明：我们步行去了王府井大街。我们在那里购物了。我想给你买个礼物。我看了很多家商店。我喜欢这个。给，这个给你！
Mr. Li: Thank you! Oh! It's a T-shirt!	李先生：谢谢！哦！这是一件T恤衫！
Li Ming: I have one, too!	李明：我也有一件！

2. Walk and walked

原文	译文
Let's find the differences!	让我们找出不同（之处）！
1. I often walk to school.	1. 我经常步行去上学。
I walked to the park yesterday.	我昨天步行去公园了。
2. I often watch TV at home.	2. 我经常在家看电视。
I watched a film last night.	我昨天晚上看了一部电影。

考点突破营

1. I missed you, too. 我也想你了。

解析：一般过去时的句子，通常用来表示过去某个时间里发生的动作或存在的状态，也表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。表示过去的时间状语有：yesterday，last night，in ＋过去的年份等。

句型结构：主语＋动词过去式＋其他.

例句：He played basketball yesterday. 他昨天打篮球了。

2. Did you have a nice trip? 你旅途愉快吗?

句型结构：Did＋主语＋动词原形＋其他？表示某人是否做过某事，是一般过去时的一般疑问句。肯定回答：Yes，主语＋did. 否定回答：No，主语＋didn't.

例句：—Did they give you lucky money? 他们给你压岁钱了吗?

—Yes, they did. 是的，他们给了。/No, they didn't. 不，他们没给。

3. —What did you do yesterday? 你们昨天做了什么?

—We walked to Wangfujing Street. 我们步行去了王府井大街。

解析：问句是一般过去时的特殊疑问句，用于询问对方在过去某个时间做过什么。句中的did是助动词，帮助构成疑问句；do作实义动词，意为“做，干”。

答语句型结构：主语＋动词过去式＋其他.

例句：—What did you do last night? 你昨晚做了什么？—I did my homework. 我写了作业。

4. 动词过去式的变化规则：

规则	例词
一般直接在动词词尾加-ed。	watch→watched　want→wanted
以不发音的字母e结尾的动词，直接在词尾加-d。	dance→danced　live→lived
以“辅音字母＋y”结尾的动词，先变y为i再加-ed。	study→studied　try→tried
以单个辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节动词，先双写末尾的辅音字母，再加-ed。	stop→stopped　shop→shopped plan→planned

Lesson 20 Jenny Goes Home

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. had 有；吃；进行（活动）（*have* 的过去式）　2. saw 看见（*see* 的过去式）
3. went 去；走；离开（*go* 的过去式）　4. ate 吃（*eat* 的过去式）　5. second 第二
6. third 第三　7. fourth 第四　8. have fun 玩得开心　9. the first day 第一天

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Did you miss me? 你想我了吗？—Yes, I did! 是的，我想你了！
2. I went to the cinema yesterday. 我昨天去看了电影。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Jenny's gift

原 文	译 文
"Hi, Mum! Did you miss me?" asks Jenny. "Yes, I did! Did you have fun in Beijing?" asks Mrs. Smith. "Yes, I had fun!" says Jenny. "What did you do?" asks Mrs. Smith. "The first day, we went to Tian'anmen Square. It's so big, Mum! The second day, we went to the Palace Museum. It's beautiful! The third day, we went to the Great Wall. It's great!" "Did you go shopping?" asks Mrs. Smith. "Yes!" answers Jenny. "The fourth day, we went to Wangfujing. This scarf is for you. Here!" "Thank you, Jenny!"	"嗨，妈妈！你想我了吗？"詹妮问。 "是的，我想你了！你在北京玩得开心吗？"史密斯太太问。 "是的，我玩得很开心！"詹妮说。 "你们做什么了？"史密斯太太问。 "第一天我们去了天安门广场。它非常大，妈妈！第二天，我们去了故宫博物院。它很漂亮！第三天，我们去了长城。它很雄伟！" "你们去购物了吗？"史密斯太太问。 "是的！"詹妮回答。"第四天，我们去了王府井。这条围巾是给你的。给！" "谢谢你，詹妮！"

2. Go and went

原 文	译 文
Let's find the differences! 1. I go to the library on Sundays. I went to the cinema yesterday. 2. I see Danny every day. I saw Mr. Wood yesterday. 3. I eat an apple every day. I ate an orange yesterday.	让我们找出不同（之处）！ 1. 我每周周日去图书馆。 我昨天去看了电影。 2. 我每天都能看见丹尼。 昨天我看见了伍德老师。 3. 我每天吃一个苹果。 昨天我吃了一个橘子。

考点突破营

1. —Did you miss me? 你想我了吗？—Yes, I did! 是的，我想你了！

解析：此句是由助动词 did 开头的一般过去时的一般疑问句。句中 Did 是 do 的过去式，在句中是助动词，没有实际意义，没有人称和数的变化。

句型结构：Did + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他？肯定回答：Yes，主语 + did. 否定回答：No，主语 + didn't.

例句：—Did he have fun yesterday? 昨天他玩得开心吗？—Yes, he did. 是的，他玩得开心。

2. I went to the cinema yesterday. 我昨天去看了电影。

解析： went 是 go 的过去式，是不规则变化。过去式不规则变化的动词还有：

do→did　have/has→had　see→saw　eat→ate　make→made　fly→flew　get→got

Lesson 21 Look at the Photos!

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. photo 照片　　2. were 是；存在（*are* 的过去式）
3. happy 快乐的；高兴的　　4. was 是；存在（*am*，*is* 的过去式）

易错点提示 photo 的复数形式是 photos，词尾加-s。

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Danny was at the Palace Museum. 丹尼在故宫。　2. What happened? 发生了什么事？

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Danny's story

原 文	译 文
Jenny: Look at this photo. We were on the train to Beijing.	詹妮：看这张照片。我们在去北京的火车上。
Danny: We played with the baby. It was fun.	丹尼：我们和婴儿玩耍。这很好玩。
Jenny: Danny was at the Palace Museum.	詹妮：丹尼在故宫。
Steven: What happened?	斯蒂芬：发生了什么事？
Jenny: He hurt his tail. He was sad.	詹妮：他伤着他的尾巴了。他很难过。
Jenny: We were on the Great Wall.	詹妮：我们在长城上。
Steven: Wow, it's so great!	斯蒂芬：哇，长城太雄伟了！
Jenny: We were very happy.	詹妮：我们很快乐。

2. Is and was

原 文	译 文
Let's find the differences!	让我们找出不同（之处）！
1. He is eight years old this year. He was seven years old last year.	1. 他今年八岁。 去年他七岁。
2. I am happy today! I was sad yesterday.	2. 今天我很高兴！ 昨天我很难过。
3. We are in Canada this week. We were in China last week.	3. 这周我们在加拿大。 上周我们在中国。

考点突破营

1. Danny was at the Palace Museum. 丹尼在故宫。

解析： 主语 + was/were + 表示地点的介词短语．表示某人过去在某地。

此句是含有 be 动词的一般过去时的肯定句。在此句型中，be 动词随主语的人称和数的变化而变化。be 动词中 am 和 is 的过去式是 was；are 的过去式是 were。

例句： We were in the park yesterday afternoon. 昨天下午我们在公园。

2. What happened? 发生了什么事？

解析： 此句用于询问过去发生了什么事？what 是疑问词，意为“什么”；happen 意为“发生”，因为询问过去发生了什么事，所以要用 happen 的过去式 happened。

Lesson 22 Gifts for Everyone

扫码听读

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. bought 买（*buy* 的过去式）　2. buy…for…给……买……　3. try 试　4. try on 试穿

易错点提示 try on 和代词连用时，代词只能放中间，即：try + 代词 + on。

二、我要掌握的句型

Here is a gift for you, Mr. Wood. 这是给你的一个礼物，伍德老师。

课文朗读

翻译达人秀

1. Gifts from China

原 文	译 文
1. We bought gifts for you in Beijing.	1. 我们在北京给你们买了礼物。
2. This kite is for you, Steven! Thanks, Jenny!	2. 斯蒂芬，这个风筝给你！ 谢谢，詹妮！
3. You're welcome. Do you like it? Yes, I do. Green is my favourite colour.	3. 不客气。你喜欢它吗？ 是的，我喜欢。绿色是我最喜欢的颜色。
4. I bought this for you, Kim! Thanks, Danny!	4. 金，我给你买了这个！ 谢谢，丹尼！
5. You're welcome. Try it on! It's too small for me, but it's good for a baby.	5. 不客气。试一下它！ 对我来说它太小了，但是对婴儿来说它很适合。
6. Here, Mr. Wood. This is for you. Thank you!	6. 给，伍德老师。这个给你。 谢谢你！
7. Let's put it on the wall.	7. 咱们把它挂在墙上吧。
8. Here is a gift for you, Mr. Wood. But, sorry, it's too small. Thank you, Danny.	8. 这是给你的一个礼物，伍德老师。但是，对不起，它太小了。 谢谢你，丹尼。

考点突破营

Here is a gift for you, Mr. Wood. 这是给你的一个礼物，伍德老师。

句型结构： Here is/are（a/an）＋名词＋for you. 此句型用于向对方赠送礼物。for 是介词，意为“给”，后接人称代词时，用其宾格形式。

例句： Here are some pencils for you. 这些是给你的铅笔。

Lesson 23 An Email from Li Ming

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. back 回原处；向后　　2. have a great time 玩得开心

二、我要掌握的句型

I had a great time with you in Beijing. 我和你们在北京玩得很开心。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

1. Li Ming's email

原 文	译 文
To: jenny @ compmail. ca; danny @ compmail. ca	**收件人：** jenny@ compmail. ca; danny@ compmail. ca
From: liming@ hotmail. com	**发件人：** liming@ hotmail. com
Subject: Photos for you	**主题：** 给你们的照片
Dear Jenny and Danny,	亲爱的詹妮和丹尼：
Here are some photos of our trip to Beijing. I had a great time with you in Beijing. The photo of the panda is for Danny. It is fine! How is Danny's tail? Please write back soon.	这里有一些我们去北京旅行的照片。我和你们在北京玩得很开心。这张有熊猫的照片是给丹尼的。它很好！丹尼的尾巴怎么样了？请尽快回信。
Yours truly,	你们真诚的朋友，
Li Ming	李明
1. Look! Danny was at Tian'anmen Square. What happened? I wanted to fly a kite. I hurt my arm and Jenny helped me.	1. 看！丹尼在天安门广场。发生了什么事？我想要放风筝。我伤到了我的胳膊。詹妮帮助了我。
2. This photo is for you, Danny. That's my panda! Hi, panda! I miss you!	2. 丹尼，这张照片是给你的。那是我的熊猫！你好，熊猫！我想你了！

考点突破营

I had a great time with you in Beijing. 我和你们在北京玩得很开心。

句型结构：主语 + had a great time with sb. + 地点. have a great time with…意为“和……玩得很开心”。

例句：She had a great time with her friends at the seaside. 她和她的朋友们在海边玩得很开心。

Lesson 24 A Gift for Little Zeke

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Story time

原 文	译 文
1. Little Zeke lives in Emma's desk. Emma and Little Zeke are friends. Emma has a sock in her desk. Little Zeke sleeps in the sock.	1. 小齐克住在埃玛的书桌里。埃玛和小齐克是朋友。埃玛在她的书桌里有一只袜子。小齐克睡在袜子里。
2. Tess is Little Zeke's friend, too. In the morning, Tess puts a hamburger and some milk on Emma's desk for Little Zeke. This is for you, Little Zeke. Thank you, Tess.	2. 苔丝也是小齐克的朋友。早晨，苔丝把一个汉堡和一些牛奶放在埃玛的书桌上给小齐克。这个给你，小齐克。谢谢你，苔丝。
3. This evening, Little Zeke feels sad. Why? Emma's class had a party. Mrs. Jones had gifts for everyone. Was there a gift for Little Zeke? No. Mrs. Jones had a book for Tom. Tom liked it. This book is for you. Thanks, Mrs. Jones.	3. 今天晚上，小齐克觉得很伤心。为什么呢？埃玛的班里举行了一个聚会。琼斯老师给每一个人一份礼物。有给小齐克礼物吗？没有。琼斯老师给了汤姆一本书。汤姆很喜欢它。这本书给你。谢谢，琼斯老师。
4. Mrs. Jones had a red ball for Emma. Emma played with her ball. This ball is for you. Thank you, Mrs. Jones.	4. 琼斯老师给了埃玛一个红色的球。埃玛玩她的球。这个球给你。谢谢你，琼斯老师。
5. Mrs. Jones had some new crayons for Tess. Tess went to her desk. She worked on a picture with her new crayons. The crayons are for you. Thank you, Mrs. Jones.	5. 琼斯老师给了苔丝一些新的蜡笔。苔丝走到她的书桌旁。她用她的新蜡笔画画。这些蜡笔给你。谢谢你，琼斯老师。
6. Little Zeke watched Mrs. Jones. He wanted a gift, too. Does Mrs. Jones know Little Zeke? No. Little Zeke talks to Emma and Tess. He doesn't talk to Mrs. Jones.	6. 小齐克看着琼斯老师。他也想要一份礼物。 琼斯老师知道小齐克吗？不知道。小齐克和埃玛、苔丝交谈。他没有和琼斯老师说话。

原 文	译 文
7. Little Zeke goes to Mrs. Jones' desk. He writes, "Hi! I'm Little Zeke. I live in Emma's desk."	7. 小齐克走到琼斯老师的书桌旁。他写道："嗨！我是小齐克。我住在埃玛的书桌里。"
8. Then he sees a gift. It is in a box. The box has a card. It says "To Little Zeke, from Mrs. Jones." Little Zeke opens the box. It is a little bed!	8. 然后他看见了一个礼物。它在盒子里。盒子上有一张卡片。上面写着"给小齐克，琼斯老师送。"小齐克打开盒子。它是一张小床！
9. Little Zeke feels very happy. He writes on the blackboard. He writes, "Thank you! Thank you! Thank you!" Then he says, "Time for sock. No! Time for bed!"	9. 小齐克感到非常高兴。他在黑板上写字。他写道："谢谢你！谢谢你！谢谢你！"然后他说："该去袜子里睡觉了。不！该上床睡觉了！"

我是小作家

介绍自己的一次旅行

一、思维步骤（总分总法）：

1. 总体介绍旅行的基本情况。比如对时间、地点、人物等进行简要说明。（总）
2. 确定一条主线。比如以某个人的活动为中心，或者按照时间的先后顺序逐步展开，描述旅行中的所见所闻。（分）
3. 对此次旅行进行总结，表达自己的心情等。（总）

二、词句储备：

必备词汇（过去式）：walked 步行　　saw 看见　　had/ ate 吃　　played 玩

wanted to do…想要做……　　went shopping 去购物　　bought gifts 买礼物

必备句型（过去时）：I saw…我看见……　　There was/were…某地有……

主语＋动词过去式＋其他．某人做过某事。

三、经典范文：

Last week I went to Dalian with my mother. We came back yesterday. Dalian is a beautiful city. The roads are clean in Dalian. On the first day, my mother and I went to see the beach and sea. And we ate some yummy seafood. On the second day, we went shopping. We bought some gifts for our family. Dalian is a very nice place. I like Dalian very much.

课时同步知识梳理

Unit 1 Going to Beijing

Lesson 1 I Am Excited!

一、按照汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 跑_____ 2. 对不起（道歉时用）_____ 3. 跳；跳跃_____
4. 唱；演唱_____ 5. 跳舞_____ 6. 坐_____
7. 向下；朝下；沿着_____ 8. 向上；在上面_____ 9. 站立；直立_____

二、翻译下列句子。

1. 他们到达火车站。_____
2. 丹尼跑向火车。_____
3. 请不要跑。_____ 4. 请坐下。_____
5. 我想唱歌。_____

Lesson 2 What Are You Doing?

一、按照汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 看见；明白_____ 2. 看；瞧_____ 3. 图画；照片_____
4. 男孩_____ 5. 女孩_____ 6. 现在_____
7. 画 _____

二、根据汉语意思写短语。

1. 从……向外看 _____ 2. 看（某人或某物）_____
3. 在火车上_____ 4. 画画_____

三、英汉互译。

1. 你正在做什么？_____
2. 詹妮正在火车上向窗外看。_____
3. 他没有在看书。他正在做什么？_____
4. 丹尼正在给你的妈妈唱歌。_____
5. There's a red school! _____

Lesson 3　Who Is Singing?

一、按照汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 女人_____　　2. 婴儿_____

3. 哭泣；喊叫_____　　4. 交谈；讨论_____

5. 男人_____　　6. 睡觉；入睡_____

二、根据汉语意思翻译下列句子。

1. 你在唱歌吗？_____

2. 他正在和你后面的男人交谈。

_____

3. 现在这个婴儿不哭了。

_____

4. 谁正在交谈？_____

Lesson 4　Who Is Hungry?

一、按照汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 谁_____　　2. 饥饿的_____

3. 水_____　　4. 茶_____

5. 糖果_____

二、根据汉语意思写短语。

1. 想要_____　　2. 一些糖果_____

三、英汉互译。

1. 谁饿了？_____

2. 你想要一些水果吗？

_____

3. 我想要一个苹果和一个橘子。

_____

4. Me, too._____

5. Here you are!_____

Lesson 5 What Are They Doing?

一、根据汉语意思写短语。

1. 看书 _____
2. 和……玩 _____
3. 玩纸牌 _____
4. 打乒乓球 _____

二、根据汉语意思补全句子。（每空一词）

1. 那个婴儿现在正在做什么？What _____ the baby _____ now?
2. 他们正玩得很开心。They _____ _____ fun.
3. 我能和这个婴儿玩吗？May I _____ _____ the baby?
4. 她正在游泳。She _____ _____.
5. 我正在画画。I _____ _____.

Unit 2 In Beijing

Lesson 7 Arriving in Beijing

一、按照汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 人们 _____
2. 许多的；许多 _____
3. 孩子 _____

二、写出下列名词的复数形式。

apple→apples

1. child→_____
2. woman→_____
3. man→_____

三、翻译下列短语。

1. arrive in _____
2. in the afternoon _____
3. on one's way to _____

四、根据汉语意思补全或翻译句子。

1. 他们在去旅馆的路上。They _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ the hotel.
2. 公园里有很多人。_____
3. 一个小孩正在放风筝。_____
4. 一些孩子正在踢足球。_____
5. 一些年老的男人正在打太极。_____

Lesson 8　Tian'anmen Square

一、按照汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 说_____　　2. 救命；帮忙_____

3. 担心；担忧_____　　4. 悲伤的_____

二、翻译下列短语或句子。

1. take pictures _____　　2. on the square _____

3. Don't worry. _____　　4. This is difficult. _____

三、根据汉语意思补全句子。

1. 天安门广场上有很多人。_____ _____ _____ _____ on Tian'anmen Square.

2. 一些男人正在放风筝。Some _____ _____ _____ kites.

3. 丹尼伤到了他的胳膊。Danny _____ _____ _____.

4. 詹妮能把风筝放得很高。Jenny can _____ _____ _____ very high.

5. 我可以帮助你。I _____ help _____.

Lesson 9　The Palace Museum

一、根据汉语意思写单词。

1. 乘坐；买下；拍照_____

2. 是；存在（*am*，*is*，*are* 等的原形动词）_____

二、英汉互译。

1. 拍照_____　　2. 向……里面看_____

3. Be careful! _____　　4. visit the Palace Museum _____

5. Sure. _____

三、根据汉语意思补全或翻译句子。

1. 今天阳光明媚。_____

2. 我可以拍张你的照片吗，詹妮？_____ _____ _____ _____ _____，Jenny?

3. 故宫有多久的历史？_____ _____ _____ the Palace Museum?

4. 请站到詹妮旁边。_____

5. 救命啊！我要跌倒了！Help! I _____ _____!

Lesson 10 The Great Wall

一、根据汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 觉得；感到_____
2. 疲劳的；累的_____
3. 停下，停止；（公共汽车、火车）站_____
4. 等待_____
5. 害怕，畏惧_____

二、写出下列短语的汉语意思。

1. far from _____
2. take a bus _____
3. the Great Wall _____
4. on the way back to…_____

三、根据汉语意思补全句子。

1. 长城有多长？

   _____ _____ is the Great Wall?

2. 丹尼感到又累又饿。

   Danny _____ _____ and _____.

3. 有太多的小汽车和公共汽车。

   There _____ too _____ _____ and _____.

4. 别害怕。Don't _____ _____.

Lesson 11 Shopping in Beijing

一、根据汉语意思写单词。

1. 为…… _____
2. 忙碌的_____

二、翻译下列短语。

1. on Wangfujing Street _____
2. walk to…_____

三、根据汉语意思补全或翻译下列句子。

1. 詹妮给妈妈买了一条围巾。

   Jenny _____ a scarf _____ her mother.

2. 丹尼喜欢购物。Danny _____ _____.

3. 现在几点了？_____

4. 你能带着它走。You can _____ _____ it.

5. 丹尼很忙。Danny _____ _____.

Unit 3 Writing Home

Lesson 13 Let's Buy Postcards!

一、根据汉语意思写单词。

1. （与 *how* 连用以询问数量）多少；很；非常_____
2. 明信片_____　　3. 信_____
4. 纸，纸张 _____　　5. 邮寄，发送_____
6. 坐 _____

二、汉译英。

1. 这张明信片上面有一幅故宫博物院的图画！_____
2. 请问我可以看看那张明信片吗？_____
3. ——这张明信片多少钱？——两元。

—_____

—_____

Lesson 14 Jenny Writes a Postcard

一、根据汉语意思写单词。

1. 写 _____　　2. 妈妈_____　　3. 爸爸_____
4. 亲爱的_____　　5. 健康的；晴朗的_____　　6. 左边的；左边_____
7. 右边的；右边_____

二、根据单词写出汉语意思。

1. address _____　　2. date _____　　3. stamp _____

三、请根据汉语意思补全或翻译句子。

1. ——你在明信片的什么地方写内容？——在左边。

—_____　　—_____

2. ——你在哪里写地址？——在右边。

—_____ put the address？—_____

3. 我想把这张明信片寄给我妈妈和爸爸。

_____

Lesson 15 Sending the Postcards

一、根据汉语意思写出单词。

1. 转向；转弯 _____ 2. 错误的_____

二、请写出下列词汇的汉语意思。

1. post office _____ 2. excuse me _____

3. go straight _____ 4. traffic lights _____

5. send the postcards _____

三、英汉互译。

1. 邮局在哪里？ _____

2. ——它们多少钱？——二十元。

—_____

—_____

3. 我要买它们。_____

4. Go straight. Turn left at the traffic lights.

_____

Lesson 16 An Email Is Fast

一、根据汉语意思写出单词。

1. 电子邮件 _____ 2. 想法；主意_____

3. 电脑_____ 4. 使用；利用_____

二、写出下列单词的汉语意思。

1. tomorrow _____ 2. will _____

3. soon _____

三、根据汉语意思写出英文句子。

1. 我们可以用这台电脑吗？

_____

2. 让我们发送电子邮件吧。

_____

Lesson 17　Danny's Email

一、根据汉语意思写出单词。

1. 友好的；体贴的 _____　　2. 我们（*we* 的宾格形式）_____

3. 多雪的_____

二、写出下列短语的汉语意思。

1. on February 8 _____　　2. write an email to…_____

三、根据汉语意思写出英文句子。

1. 加拿大的天气怎么样？

_____

2. 下雪了吗？_____

3. 没有雪。_____

4. 多么棒的旅行啊！

_____

Unit 4　Did You Have a Nice Trip?

Lesson 19　Li Ming Comes Home

一、根据汉语意思写出单词。

1. 故事_____　　2. 做，干；助动词（*do* 的过去式）_____

3. 昨天_____　　4. 夜晚，晚上_____

二、写出下列单词或词组的汉语意思。

1. walk to…_____　　2. at home _____

3. last night _____　　4. difference _____

三、根据汉语意思写出英文句子。

1. 我也想你了。_____

2. 你旅行愉快吗？

_____

3. 你们昨天做了什么？

_____

Lesson 20 Jenny Goes Home

一、根据汉语意思写出单词。

1. 有；吃；进行（*have* 的过去式）_____
2. 去；走；离开（*go* 的过去式）_____
3. 看见（*see* 的过去式）_____
4. 吃（*eat* 的过去式）_____

二、写出下列单词的汉语意思。

1. second _____
2. third _____
3. fourth _____
4. every _____

三、根据汉语意思写出英文句子。

1. 第一天，我们去了天安门广场。

_____

2. 你们去购物了吗？

_____

3. 你做什么了？

_____

Lesson 21 Look at the Photos!

一、根据汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 照片_____
2. 是；存在（*are* 的过去式）_____
3. 快乐的；高兴的_____
4. 是；存在（*am*，*is* 的过去式）_____

二、英译汉。

1. happen _____
2. on the train to Beijing _____
3. on the Great Wall _____

三、根据汉语意思写出英文句子。

1. 我们在去北京的火车上。

_____

2. 发生了什么事？

_____

3. 丹尼在故宫。_____

Lesson 22 Gifts for Everyone

一、根据汉语意思写单词。

1. 买（*buy* 的过去式）_____ 2. 试_____

二、写出下列短语的汉语意思。

1. buy gifts for you _____ 2. be good for…_____

3. try on _____ 4. too small for me _____

三、根据汉语意思写出英文句子。

1. 我们在北京给你们买了礼物。

_____

2. 试一下它！

_____

Lesson 23 An Email from Li Ming

一、汉英互译。

1. 回原处；向后_____ 2. have a great time _____

3. write back _____ 4. fly a kite _____

5. the photo of the panda _____

二、英汉互译。

1. Here are some photos of our trip to Beijing.

_____

2. What happened?

_____

3. Jenny helped me.

_____

4. 我和你们在北京玩得很开心。

_____

5. 这张照片是给你的。

_____

期末复习知识梳理

Unit 1 Going to Beijing

一、根据汉语意思写单词。

1. 糖果_____　2. 茶_____　3. 水_____
4. 饥饿的_____　5. 男人_____　6. 婴儿_____
7. 女人_____　8. 照片_____　9. 男孩_____
10. 女孩_____

二、写出下列单词的现在分词形式。

1. run _____　2. jump _____　3. sing _____
4. dance _____　5. sit _____　6. stand _____
7. look _____　8. draw _____　9. swim _____
10. have _____

三、根据汉语意思写短语。

1. 从……向外看_____　2. 看（某人或某物）_____
3. 和……交谈_____　4. 玩纸牌_____
5. 玩得开心_____

四、根据汉语意思写出下列句子。

1. 不要跑。_____
2. 你正在做什么呢？_____
3. 丹尼正在洗手。_____
4. 谁正在唱歌呢？_____
5. ——詹妮正在做什么？_____
   ——她正在跑。_____
6. ——你想要一些水果吗？_____
   ——好的。_____

Unit 2 In Beijing

一、根据汉语意思写出下列单词。

1. 说 _____　2. 救命；帮忙 _____　3. 担心；担忧 _____

4. 乘坐；买下；拍照 _____　5. 觉得；感到_____

6. 停下，停止_____　7. 等待_____　8. 疲劳的；累的_____

9. 害怕，畏惧_____　10. 忙碌的_____

二、写出下列名词的复数形式。

1. man _____　2. woman _____　3. baby _____

4. child _____　5. bus _____　6. chair _____

7. boy _____　8. family _____　9. potato _____

10. box _____

三、翻译下列短语。

1. 到达 _____　2. 放风筝_____

3. 踢足球_____　4. 拍照_____

5. 去购物_____　6. 在某人去……的路上_____

7. 许多人 _____

四、翻译下列句子或对话。

1. 他们在去旅馆的路上。_____

2. 桌子上有一些书。_____

3. 你还好吗？_____

4. 长城有多长？_____

5. 一些老人正在打太极。_____

6. ——我可以给你拍张照吗？_____

——当然可以。_____

7. ——几点了？_____

——两点了。_____

Unit 3 Writing Home

一、根据汉语意思写出单词。

1. 多少；很；非常_____　2. 右边；右边的 _____　3. 左边；左边的_____

4. 亲爱的 _____　5. 妈妈 _____　6. 爸爸_____

7. 健康的；晴朗的_____　8. 错误的 _____

9. 想法；主意_____　10. 电子邮件_____

11. 使用；利用 _____　12. 电脑 _____　13. 写_____

14. 友好的；体贴的 _____　15. 转向；转弯_____

二、写出下列词汇的汉语意思。

1. tomorrow _____　2. snowy _____　3. a picture of…_____

4. write a letter _____　5. go straight _____　6. forget to do sth. _____

7. have fun _____　8. send…to…_____　9. write sb…_____

三、英译汉。

1. How much is this postcard? _____

2. Do you need stamps, Danny? _____

3. See you soon. _____　4. Good idea! _____

5. You are wrong. _____

6. What a fun trip! _____

四、汉译英。

1. 这张明信片上有一幅故宫的图画！_____

2. 我想把这张明信片寄给我的妈妈和爸爸。_____

3. ——打扰一下，邮局在哪里？_____

   ——直走。在交通信号灯处向左转。_____

4. ——我们可以用这台电脑吗？_____

   ——当然可以。_____

5. 明天我将要回家。_____

6. 加拿大天气怎么样？_____

Unit 4 Did You Have a Nice Trip?

一、根据汉语意思写出单词或短语。

1. 故事_____　　2. 昨天_____
3. 夜晚，晚上_____　　4. 高兴的；快乐的_____
5. 照片_____　　6. 看电影_____
7. 吃一个苹果_____　　8. 进行一次不错的旅行_____
9. 给你买一份礼物_____　　10. 步行去上学_____

二、写出下列单词的过去式。

1. go→_____　　2. see→_____　　3. buy→_____
4. have→_____　　5. eat→_____　　6. am/is→_____
7. are→_____　　8. do→_____　　9. walk→_____
10. watch→_____　　11. play→_____　　12. look→_____
13. want→_____　　14. call→_____　　15. happen→_____

三、写出下列词汇的汉语意思。

1. often _____　　2. third _____　　3. fourth _____
4. party _____　　5. tell a story _____　　6. the second day _____
7. this year _____　　8. try it on _____　　9. every day _____

四、英汉互译。

1. ——昨天你们做了什么？_____
   ——我们步行去了王府井大街。_____
2. ——你想我吗？_____
   ——是，我想你。_____
3. 丹尼在故宫。_____
4. 发生了什么？_____
5. 我和你们在北京玩得很开心。_____
6. Here are some photos of our trip to Beijing. _____
7. We were on the train to Beijing. _____
8. I went to the cinema yesterday. _____
9. I go to the library on Sundays. _____

参考答案

课时同步知识梳理

Unit 1 Going to Beijing

Lesson 1 I Am Excited!

一、1. run 2. sorry 3. jump 4. sing 5. dance
6. sit 7. down 8. up 9. stand

二、1. They arrive at the train station.
2. Danny runs to the train.
3. Please don't run. 4. Please sit down.
5. I want to sing.

Lesson 2 What Are You Doing?

一、1. see 2. look 3. picture 4. boy 5. girl 6. now
7. draw

二、1. look out of 2. look at 3. on the train
4. draw a picture

三、1. What are you doing?
2. Jenny is looking out of the window on the train.
3. He is not reading a book. What is he doing?
4. Danny is singing a song to your mother.
5. 有一所红色的学校!

Lesson 3 Who Is Singing?

一、1. woman 2. baby 3. cry 4. talk 5. man 6. sleep

二、1. Are you singing?
2. He is talking to the man behind you.
3. Now the baby isn't crying.
4. Who is talking?

Lesson 4 Who Is Hungry?

一、1. who 2. hungry 3. water 4. tea 5. candy

二、1. would like 2. some candy

三、1. Who is hungry?
2. Would you like some fruit?
3. I'd like an apple and an orange.
4. 我也是。 5. 给你。

Lesson 5 What Are They Doing?

一、1. read a book 2. play with 3. play cards
4. play ping-pong

二、1. is; doing 2. are having 3. play with
4. is swimming 5. am drawing

Unit 2 In Beijing

Lesson 7 Arriving in Beijing

一、1. people 2. many 3. child

二、1. children 2. women 3. men

三、1. 到达 2. 在下午 3. 在某人去……的路上

四、1. are on their way to
2. There are many people in the park.
3. A child is flying a kite.
4. Some children are playing football.
5. Some old men are doing Tai Chi.

Lesson 8 Tian'anmen Square

一、1. say 2. help 3. worry 4. sad

二、1. 照相 2. 在广场上 3. 别担心。
4. 这是困难的。

三、1. There are many people 2. men are flying
3. hurts his arm 4. fly her kite 5. can; you

Lesson 9 The Palace Museum

一、1. take 2. be

二、1. take a picture 2. look in 3. 小心!
4. 参观故宫 5. 当然可以。

三、1. It's sunny today. 2. May I take your picture
3. How old is 4. Please stand beside Jenny.
5. am falling

Lesson 10 The Great Wall

一、1. feel 2. tired 3. stop 4. wait 5. afraid

二、1. 离……很远 2. 乘公共汽车 3. 长城
4. 在回……的路上

三、1. How long 2. feels tired; hungry
3. are; many cars; buses 4. be afraid

Lesson 11 Shopping in Beijing

一、1. for 2. busy

二、1. 在王府井大街 2. 走向……

三、1. buys; for 2. loves shopping 3. What time is it now?
4. walk with 5. is busy

Unit 3 Writing Home

Lesson 13 Let's Buy Postcards!

一、1. much 2. postcard 3. letter 4. paper 5. send
6. sit

二、1. This postcard has a picture of the Palace Museum!
2. May I see that postcard, please?
3. How much is this postcard?
It's two yuan.

Lesson 14 Jenny Writes a Postcard

一、1. write 2. mum 3. dad 4. dear 5. fine
6. left 7. right

二、1. 地址 2. 日期 3. 邮票

三、1. Where do you write on a postcard?
On the left.
2. Where do you; On the right.
3. I want to send this postcard to my mum and dad.

Lesson 15 Sending the Postcards

一、1. turn 2. wrong

二、1. 邮局 2. 打扰一下 3. 直行
4. 交通信号灯 5. 寄明信片

三、1. Where is the post office?
2. How much are they?
They are twenty yuan.

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用

3. I'll take them, please.
4. 直走。在交通信号灯处左转。

Lesson 16 An Email Is Fast

一、1. email　2. idea　3. computer　4. use
二、1. 明天　2.（情态动词）会，要　3. 很快，马上
三、1. Can we use the computer?　2. Let's send an email.

Lesson 17 Danny's Email

一、1. kind　2. us　3. snowy
二、1. 在二月八日　2. 给……写一封电子邮件
三、1. How's the weather in Canada?　2. Is it snowy?
3. There is no snow.　4. What a great trip!

Unit 4 Did You Have a Nice Trip?

Lesson 19 Li Ming Comes Home

一、1. story　2. did　3. yesterday　4. night
二、1. 步行去……　2. 在家　3. 昨晚　4. 差异；不同
三、1. I missed you, too.　2. Did you have a nice trip?
3. What did you do yesterday?

Lesson 20 Jenny Goes Home

一、1. had　2. went　3. saw　4. ate
二、1. 第二　2. 第三　3. 第四　4. 每一个，每个
三、1. The first day, we went to Tian'anmen Square.
2. Did you go shopping?　3. What did you do?

Lesson 21 Look at the Photos!

一、1. photo　2. were　3. happy　4. was
二、1. 发生　2. 在去北京的火车上　3. 在长城上
三、1. We were on the train to Beijing.　2. What happened?
3. Danny was at the Palace Museum.

Lesson 22 Gifts for Everyone

一、1. bought　2. try
二、1. 给你（们）买礼物　2. 对……来说正好
3. 试穿　4. 对我来说太小
三、1. We bought gifts for you in Beijing.　2. Try it on!

Lesson 23 An Email from Li Ming

一、1. back　2. 玩得开心　3. 回信
4. 放风筝　5. 这张熊猫的照片
二、1. 这儿有一些我们去北京旅行的照片。
2. 发生了什么？　3. 詹妮帮助了我。
4. I had a great time with you in Beijing.
5. This photo is for you.

期末复习知识梳理

Unit 1 Going to Beijing

一、1. candy　2. tea　3. water　4. hungry　5. man
6. baby　7. woman　8. picture　9. boy　10. girl
二、1. running　2. jumping　3. singing　4. dancing
5. sitting　6. standing　7. looking　8. drawing
9. swimming　10. having
三、1. look out of　2. look at　3. talk to
4. play cards　5. have fun
四、1. Don't run.　2. What are you doing?
3. Danny is washing hands.　4. Who is singing?
5. What is Jenny doing?
She is running.
6. Would you like some fruit? Yes, please.

Unit 2 In Beijing

一、1. say　2. help　3. worry　4. take　5. feel
6. stop　7. wait　8. tired　9. afraid　10. busy
二、1. men　2. women　3. babies　4. children　5. buses
6. chairs　7. boys　8. families　9. potatoes　10. boxes
三、1. arrive in　2. fly a kite　3. play football
4. take a picture　5. go shopping
6. on one's way to...　7. many people
四、1. They are on their way to the hotel.
2. There are some books on the desk.
3. Are you okay?　4. How long is the Great Wall?
5. Some old men are doing Tai Chi.
6. May I take your picture? Sure.
7. What time is it? It's two o'clock.

Unit 3 Writing Home

一、1. much　2. right　3. left　4. dear　5. mum　6. dad
7. fine　8. wrong　9. idea　10. email　11. use
12. computer　13. write　14. kind　15. turn
二、1. 明天　2. 多雪的　3. 一张……的图片
4. 写信　5. 直行　6. 忘记做某事　7. 玩得开心
8. 寄……给……　9. 写……给某人
三、1. 这张明信片多少钱？　2. 丹尼，你需要邮票吗？
3. 希望尽快见到你。　4. 好主意！　5. 你错了。
6. 多么有趣的一次旅行啊！
四、1. This postcard has a picture of the Palace Museum!
2. I want to send this postcard to my mum and dad.
3. Excuse me, where is the post office?
Go straight. Turn left at the traffic lights.
4. Can we use the computer?　Sure.
5. I'll go back home tomorrow.
6. How's the weather in Canada?

Unit 4 Did You Have a Nice Trip?

一、1. story　2. yesterday　3. night　4. happy　5. photo
6. watch a film　7. eat an apple　8. have a nice trip
9. buy a gift for you　10. walk to school
二、1. went　2. saw　3. bought　4. had　5. ate
6. was　7. were　8. did　9. walked
10. watched　11. played　12. looked
13. wanted　14. called　15. happened
三、1. 经常　2. 第三　3. 第四　4. 聚会　5. 讲故事
6. 第二天　7. 今年　8. 试穿　9. 每天
四、1. What did you do yesterday?
We walked to Wangfujing Street.
2. Did you miss me? Yes, I did.
3. Danny was at the Palace Museum.
4. What happened?
5. I had a great time with you in Beijing.
6. 这儿有一些我们去北京旅行的照片。
7. 我们在去北京的火车上。
8. 昨天我去了电影院。
9. 星期天我去图书馆。

请沿此虚线裁剪下使用